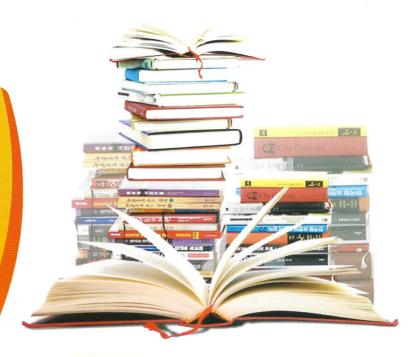


قواعد العمالقة



For Secondary Stage & All English Learners

للمرحلة الثانوية / جميع الصفوف ولكل رارسي اللغة الإنجليزية

كتــاب يشمل جميع قواعــــد اللغة الانجليزيــة بشكــــل مسط





Part one









رف الج

The letter

تتكون حروف الهجاء الانحليزية من (26 حرفاً:

(21) حرفاً ساكن consonants ور 5) احرف متحر كة vowels وهم (5) احرف متحر كة



CAAFT . പര് ال الك

1) Capital letters

الحروف الكسرة

A	В	C	D	E	F	G	Н	1	J	K	L	M	N	0	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z
a	b	C	d	е	f	g	h	i	j	k	CERTIFIC	m	n	0	p	q	r	S	t	u	V	W	X	У	Z

2) Small letters

الحروف الصغيرة

🗐 للحظ أن اللغة الانجليزية تتكون من 26حرفاً و تحتوى على 48 صوناً (sound) وذلـك بسـبب أن بعـض الحـروف لهــا أكثر من صوت على سييل المثال:

The letter (C)

(e - j) ابنطق کحرف (الکاف) إذا أتى بعده أي حرف ساكن ماعدا (h - y) أو أي حرف متحرك ماعدا

comic close cat cut crazv cow (e, i, V) ينطق كحرف (س) إذا جاء بعده حرف (C) ينطق كحرف (س)

police policy cell circle cinema

(io, ie, ia) حرف الـ (c) ينطق كحرف (ش) إذا أتى بعده (c)

conscientious efficient especial social financial

و حرف الـ (C) إذا تبع بحرف (h) فستكون هناك ثلاث اصوات بنطق حرف (تش)

choice chief teacher chest cheese chair وينطق حرف (ك)

choral headache stomach chorus school chemist

🕤 وينطق حرف (ش)

Machine chassis champagne

The letter (S)

♦ حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (س) إذا أتى بعده أى حرف ساكن أو متحرك ماعدا (h - i - u)

safe steam sound spin sun sea ♦ حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (ش) إذا جاء بعده حرف (h) في بعض الكلمات مثل:

shoes shelf should she short show

🕜 حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (ف) إذا جاء قبله حرف (i - u) في بعض الكلمات مثل: revise advise refuse visit is use



The letter (②)

		(e, i, y	بعده أي حرف ماعدا (حرف (الجيم) إذا أتى <i>ب</i>) حرف الـ (<mark>9</mark>) ينطق ك
go	gap	glad	game	glass	grab
		(e, i,)) إذا جاء بعده حرف (/	حرف (الجيم العطشة)	و حرف الـ (g) ينطق ك
giant	gym	geography	gem	gymnastics	general
		(e , i , y)	(الجيم) إذا جاء بعده	ات التي تنطق كحرف	فيما عدا بعض الكلما
get	girl	gift	give	gear	geese
		ق (صامت)	حرف (الفاء) أو لا تنط	كحرف (الجيم) أو ك) حرف الـ (gh) ينطق ه
ghost	light	fight	bought	enough	laugh
		The let	tter (<mark>t</mark>)		
	מֿל	ِمتحرك ماعدا (h) م	ده أى حرف ساكن أو	ىرف (التاء) إذا أتى بعا) حرف الـ (t) ينطق كح
take	top	table	tent	tin	tree
		لكلمات مثل	حرف (h) في بعض ا	ىرف (ث) إذا جاء بعده	، حرف الـ (t) ينطق كح
cloth	bath	three	throw	think	thank
		كلمات مثل	حرف (h) في بعض ال	رف (ذ) إذا جاء بعده ·	ا حرف الـ (t) ينطق كح
this	that	the	father	than	bother
		مات مثل	ه (U) في بعض الكا	برف (تش) إذا أتى بعد) حرف الـ (t) ينطق كح
future	culture	lecture	agriculture	nature	factual
8		كلمات مثل	ه (ion) في بعض الد	رف (تش) إذا أتى بعد	، حرف الـ (t) ينطق كح
information	action	fiction	location	position	national
		Silent	letters		

وهي الحروف التي تكتب ولا تنطق:

				رود حصق.	وم ،سي حسب	وحق .س
Letter (b)	قبله حرف (m) أو بعد حرف (t)		lamb	comb	climb	debt
Letter (k)	بعده حرف (n)		knife	know	knight	knee
Letter (I)	بعده حرف (k - d - f)	فى بعض	talk	should	could	half
Letter (n)	قبله حرف (m)		autumn	Hymnbook	كتاب الترانيم	•
Letter (p)	بعده حرف (S) في أول الجملة		pseudo	psychology	psycholo	gist
Letter (s)	بعده حرف (۱)	7	aisle	island	islander	
Letter (t)	قبله حرف (s)	الكلمات	castle	wrestle	fasten	listen
	بعده حرف (٥)	17	hour	honest	honour	
Letter (h)	قبله حرف (w)	<u>र्</u> य.	what	why	where	when
	قبله حرف (g)		light	fight	night	might
1 -44 - 4 - 4	بعده حرف (r)		write	wrestling	wrong	wrist
Letter (w)	بعده حرفی (ho)		who	whose	whoop	whole

لا يمكننا وضع قواعد ثابتة لنطق الحروف ولكن يمكننا وضع بعض الثوابت في النطق مع وجود شواذ تساعدنا في النطق. أفضل طريقة لمعرفة الاصوات و كيفية النطق الصحيح هي الممارسة عن طريق التدرب علي نطق الكلمات.

CIANTS

Giants' Grammar

GIANTS

الكلمة

The word

🗐 الكلمة: مجموعة من الحروف معاً تعطي معني ويمكن تقسيم الكلمة إلى **7** اجزاء.

Parts of Speech

أقســـام الكلـام

Nous Propous	Vorle	Adjective	Advorte (Article	Preposition
Noun) (Pronoun)	Verb)	aio aio	Adverb) (Article)	حرف جر

GIANTS

1) Noun

اسم

ن أو جماد أو مجرد:	اللسم هو كلمة تستخدم للتسمية ويشمل اسم انسان أو حيوان أو مكا 🗐
شخص Person	▶ Ali - Aya - man - woman - boy - girl - worker - vet etc.
مڪان Place	▶ Cairo - school - home - park - Egypt - cityetc.
حيوان Animal	monkey - bird - lion - cat - tiger - bee - insect etc.
شيء Thing	car - bag -plant - tree - tool- shirt - pen - office etc.
معنوي Abstract	▶ freedom - independence - evil - love - beautyetc.
	<i>[</i>] ويمكن تقسيم الاسم بشكل عام إلى:
The proper noun الاسم العلم	 Ali - Aya - Egypt - Africa - Cairo etc. اسم شخص أو مكان أو حدث
The common noun	animal - bird - book - car - child - man - pen - river -
	street - tree - town etc. هو اسم عام لڪل
The Material noun	▶ glass - gold - iron - milk - salt - water…etc. المادة الخام
The collective noun	 ▶ army - audience - crew - group - herd - people - مواسم لجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء .
The Abstract noun	 action - beauty - courage - death - fear - grief - happiness - life - love etc.
ام: المراجعة	ويمكن تقسيم الاسم من حيث الجنس (The Gender) إلى أربعة أقس
الاسم للذكور Masculine Gender	 man - boy - brother - uncle - son - father - husband actor - hero - waiter - kingetc.
Feminine Gender אינור פוריין וויים ואינור אינור	 woman - girl - sister - aunt - daughter - mother wife actress - heroine - waitress- queenetc.
الاسم الشترك Common Gender	bird - child - cousin - enemy - friend - parent - teacher - person - cat - doctor etc.
Neuter Gender الاسم المحايد للجماد	 book - box - glass - house - pen - stone - table - car chairetc. ويمكن تقسيم الاسم من حيث الشكل (The Form) إلى ثلاثة أقسام:
The simple noun	board - chair - knife - pen - man - ball - box etc.
The compound noun الاسم الركب	armchair - blackboard - railway - rainbow
The derivative noun	sailor- friendship - happiness - childhood - building
	اسم المشتق من فعل أو صفة أو اسم أخر بإضافة مقطع إلى أخره singer.



ويمكن تقسيم الاسم من حيث العدد (Countable and Uncountable) إلى قسمين:

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة Countable and Uncountable Nouns

Countable Nouns

الأسماء المعدودة

- 🔞 an one this that each every...) الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد ويمكن أن يأتي قبلهم واحدة من
 - (is was has v+s....) مفرد (عدما فعل مفرد (أ

a bag	this car	each boy	one story	is
a book	this table	each student	one pen	was
an apple	that bus	every hero	one cup	, has
an egg	that watch	every box	one flat	v+s

- 🕜 الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها جمع بإضافة (s / es / ies) إلى أخرها.
- (these those many few a lot of several some any...) ويمكن أنّ يأتي قبلهم
 - (are were have infinitive....) ویأتی بعدها فعل جمع 🧊

bags	these cars	many boys	four stories	are
books	these tables	few students	two pens	were
apples	those buses	any heroes	a lot of cups	have
eggs	those watches	some boxes	lots of flats	infinitive

Important Notes

- 🕥 تجمع معظم الأسماء بإضافة (S)
- bag⊃ bagspen⊃ penstrain⊃ trainsboy⊃ boysflat⊃ flatsplane⊃ planes
 - ۞ الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ (O قبلها حرف ساكن) s / ch / sh / x / z / تاخذ (es):
- boxDoxeswitchWitchesheroheroesglassglasseswishwishesvolcanovolcanoes
- 🕜 الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ (y قبلها حرف ساكن) تأخذ (ies) بدون (y) أما إذا كانت (y قبلها حرف متحرك) تأخذ (S) بعد (y):
- factory factories family families party parties monkey monkeys way play plays
 - و إذا انتهى الاسم بـ (f / fe) البعض يضاف له ves مع حذف (f / fe) البعض يضاف له (s) بعد (f / fe) بعد عند التهي الاسم بـ (s)
- wolf
 ⊃ wolves
 knife
 ⊃ knives
 wife
 ⊃ wives

 belief
 ⊃ beliefs
 roof
 ⊃ roofs
 chief
 ⊃ chiefs
 - ⊙ اللكية مع الاسماء (لاحظ الفرق ما بين S' و'S)

s + اسم مفرد / اسم جمع لا ينتهي بـ S	Ali's car	children's house	men's clothes
اسم جمع ينتهى بـ S يضاف له " فقط	boys' house	birds' wings	ladies' songs

Wise Saying

All great discoveries are made by mistake. کل الوخترعات العظیمة إکتشفت بالخطأ



الأسماء التي تعد قد يكون لها جمع غير منتظم مثل:

رد Singular	io a
man	رجل
woman	امرأة
child	طفل
tooth	سنه
foot	قدم
ОХ	ثور
mouse	فأر
basis	أساس
bacterium	بكتريا
oasis	واحة
datum	معلومة
crisis	أزمة
phenomenon	ظاهرة
goose	إوزة

.g	V 0)
Pl	ural جمع
men	رجال
women	نساء
children	أطفال
teeth	أسنان
feet	أقدام
oxen	ثيران
mice	فئران
bases	أسس
bacteria	بكتريا
oases	واحات
data	معلومات
crises	أزمات
phenomena	ظواهر
geese	أوز
lanamanan	***************************************

🕜 هناك أسماء دائما في صبغة الحمع:

					= .
people	الناس	scissors	مقص	jeans	بنطلون جينز
police	الشرطة	stairs	السلم	shorts	بنطلون قصير
clothes	ملابس	remains	بقايا	trousers	بنطلون
glasses	نظارة	public	العامة / الجمهور	pliers	زردية (بنسة)
youth	الشباب	cattle	ماشية	goods	بضائع

0000

♦ بعض الاسماء تكون مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى المستخدم:

مفرد Singular				
the people	الشعب (مفرد / جمع)			
means	وسيلة			
series	سلسلة			
species	فصيلة			
craft	ناقلة			
fish	سمكة			
deer	غزال			
sheep	خروف			
mathematics	علم الرياضيات			
statistics	علم الإحصاء			

Field	al جمع
people	الناس (جمع)
means	وسائل
series	سلاسل
species	فصائل
craft	ناقلات
fish	سمك
deer	غزلان
sheep	غنم
mathematics	حسابات
statistics	الإحصاءات

- ✓ Statistics show that women live longer than men.
- ✓ Statistics is an easy subject.
- ✓ On average, people who don't smoke are healthier than people who do.

🗨 بعض الاسماء قد تنتهي بـ (s) ولكنها مفرد :

classics	دراسة إليونانية والرومانية	genetics	علم الوراثة	economics	علم الاقتصاد
politics	علم السياسة	statistics	علم الإحصاء	gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز
physics	الفيزياء	athletics	ألعاب القوي	linguistics	علم اللغويات
mathemat	الرياضيات lics	electronics	الالكترونيات	mechanics	علم اليكانيكا

- ✓ Physics is a hard subject.
- ✓ Athletics is my favourite sport.
- ✓ Economics helps us to run any economic problem.





♦ لاحظ الأسماء الكلية تعامل جمع (إذا إشير إلى عناصرها كأجزاء متفرقة) وتعامل مفر د (إذا إشير إلى عناصرها كجزء واحد):

.(50 %)	مراحا المتراجي المتراجي المتراجي	6			
the public	العامة	class	الفصل	government	الحكومة
people	الشعب	school	المدرسة	gang	عصابة
group	مجموعة	faculty	الكلية	cast	فريق التمثيل
team	فريق	navy	الأسطول	band	فرقة موسيقية
family	عائلة	army	الجيش	staff	هيئة عاملين
crew	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة	population	السكان	Herd (pack-floo	قطيع حيوانات (k:

✓ The Egyptian team is playing well.

✓ All team are leaving the pitch.

🕥 لاحظ استخدام ما يلي مع الاسماء المعدودة الجمع:

(some - any - a lot of - lots of - many - few - a few - how many) + اسم يعد جمع

- ✓ My friends are coming to stay at the weekend.
- ✓ We didn't take many pictures.

الصفة العني (the فبل صفة تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع وتساوي في المعني (people + الصفة):

....فاقدي البصر the blind / الطيبين the good / الأغنياء the rich / الفقراء the poor

✓ The rich are to help the poor (poor people) in this time.

Uncountable Nouns

الأسماء غير المعدودة

📵 الأسماء التي لا تعد اسماء ليس لها جمع ولا يأتي قبلهم (a – an– one – these – those)

(is - was - has - v + s) ویأتی بعدها فعل مفرد

	important	uncountable nouns	يعد	اسماء مهمة لا	
information	معلومات	music	موسيقى	traffic	مرور
news	اخبار	equipment	المعدات	electricity	كهرباء
furniture	اثاث	cloth	قماش	jewellery	مجوهرات
advice	نصيحة	baggage	حقائب	rubbish	قمامة
money	مال	luggage	أمتعة	work	عمل
bread	خبز	travel	السفر	hair	شعر
time	وقت	clothing	الملبس	machinery	ألات

🗐 ويمكننا تقسيم اللسماء التي لا تعد كما يلي:

1. Liquids	السوائل	milk - water - juice - tea - coffee - oil etc.
2. Materials	الخامات	gold - wood - coffee - tea - paper - iron - glass - stone - sugar etc.
3. Gases	الغازات	oxygen - hydrogen - carbon dioxideetc.
4. School subjects المواد الدراسية		history - physics - chemistry - biology - geography - psychology - mathematics etc.
5. Meals	الوجبات	breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper
6. Languages	اللغات	Arabic - English - French - German etc.
7. Sports		tennis - football - gymnastics - volleyball - squash - hockey swimming - athletics etc.
8. activities	الأنشطة	studying - reading - writing - shopping etc.
9. Abstract nouns	الأسماء المجردة	 freedom - advice - luck - honesty - hope - beauty help - love - experience - confidence - courage - patience - peace - poverty - knowledge etc.
10. Natural phenome	na	drought - lightning - heat - snow - thunder - light -
الظواهر الطبيعية		rain etc.



- ✓ Most furniture is made of wood.
- ✓ I'm sorry but my patience is wearing thin.
- ✓ English is spoken in many countries.
- √ This coffee is smooth and rich.
- √ The only piece of furniture he has is a bed.
- ✓ The water in the lake is so clear.

- ✓ This oil's a bit old, I'm afraid.
- ✓ Money is the root of all evil.
- √ Your luggage is very heavy.
- √ This bread is fresh.
- s a bed. ✓ This information is very useful. ✓ My advice for you is to buy a new car.

Quantifiers

تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

a lot of - many - much - a few - few - a little - little

	,	
a lot of	ما في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة.	🧻 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع أو اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامهم
=lots of	▶ I have got a lot of friends.	▶ I have got a lot of money.
	استفهام.	📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع ويفضل استخدامها في النفي والا
many	▶ I haven't got many friends.	Have you got many friends?
much	تفهام.	📋 تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامها في النفي والاسا
much	▶ I haven't got much money.	Have you got much money?
a few		📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولكن يكفي
alew	▶ I have a few experiences.	(enough)
few	نفي الجملة لذا لا تأتي في الجملة المنفية).	📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولا يكفي (ت
IGW	▶ I have few experiences.	(not enough)
a little		📋 تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولكن تكفى
a little	▶ I have a little money.	(enough)
little	في الجملة لذا لا تأتي في الجملة المنفية).	📋 تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولا يكفي (تن
	▶ I have little money.	(not enough)

الدظ: يفضل استخدام (many - much) في النفي والاستفهام ولكن يمكن استخدامهم في الجملة المثبتة إذا [[] جاء قبلها (so - too - as) أو إذا أتوا قبل الفاعل:

- ✓ He has so much money.
- ✓ I have faced too many problems recently.
- √ Many people suffer from diabetes.

Some - any

		is - airy	
		🗊 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع أو اسم لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة وفي سؤإلى العرض والطلب.	
		اسم یعد " I found some good stories.	
	some	اسم لا يعد l drank some water.	
		عرض كwould you like some tea?	
		کلب Can I have some of these oranges?	-
PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF TH		📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد (<mark>مفرد أو جمع</mark>) أو اسم لا يعد في جملة استفهامية أو منفية.	10
		اسم یعد l don't want <mark>any</mark> problems.	
		اسم لا يعد I didn't drink any juice.	_
-	any	► Do you have <mark>any</mark> experience?	
-	GILL)	تأتي مع الكلمات الدالة على النفى مثل :	
-		hardly - scarcely - seldom - never - without - refuse - too to	
		► He never had any luck. = he had no luck.	
		▶ We hardly had any money.	/



Important Notes

يمكننا تلخيص تعبيرات الكمية وتعبيرات العدد في الجدول التإلى:

يعد (جمع)	لا يعد (يعامل مفرد)	يعد ولا يعد	
many (several)	much (plenty of)	a lot of	
few	Little	lots of	
a few	a little	some	
How many	How much	any	

🕜 لاحظ استخدام ما يلي مع الاسماء الغير معدودة:

(some - any - a lot of - lots of - much - little - a little - how much) + اسم لا يعد

- ✓ We didn't do much shopping.
- ✓ I have a little work to do.
- ✓ We listened to some music.
- ✓ Did you buy any apple juice?
- @ لاحظ استخدام (a an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقتها صفة:
- √ We had a wonderful lunch at a restaurant yesterday.
- ✓ Ali had lost his job, and it was a difficult time for him.

بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل:

) بعض الاسماء يمكن ان تعد او لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل: 				
الاسم	المعني	تعد أو لا تعد	1	
a paper / papers	جريدة / جرائد	يعد	I'm going to buy a paper.	
paper	ورق الكتابة	لا يعد	I'd like some writing paper.	
an orange	برتقال فاكهة		There are two oranges on the table.	
orange	اللون البرتقإلى		I don't like orange. I prefer red.	
an iron	مكواة	يعد	She bought an iron yesterday.	
iron	الحديد	لا يعد	This table is made of iron.	
a chicken	دجاجة	يعد	I'd like to buy a chicken.	
chicken	لحم الدجاج		Do you like chicken?	
a company	شركة	يعد	The law obliges companies to pay decent wages.	
company	صحبة	لا يعد	You should be in good company.	
a time / times	مرة / مرات		He went to London three times.	
time	الوقت	لا يعد	Don't hurry. There's plenty of time.	
a hair / hairs	شعرة / شعر		I see two hairs on your jacket.	
hair	شعر (قص)	لا يعد	My hair is short.	
a school	مدرسة		The government built a school in our village.	
school	دراسة		My brother started school at the age of 6.	
a coffee	فنجان من القهوة		Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee)	
coffee	قهوة (مشروب)	لا يعد	▶ Have you got any coffee?	
a tea	كوب شاي		Could I have two cups of coffee and a tea, please?	
tea	شأى (مشروب)		India grows tea for export.	
an experience	تجربة بالحياة		Travelling is an experience you will never forget.	
experience	خبرة		This job needs experience.	
a light	مصباح كهربي		We need two lights in this room.	
light	الضوء	لا يعد	The sun gives us light.	
a cold	نزلة برد		l've got a bad cold.	
cold	البرد عموما		Don't go out in the cold without a coat.	
a glass	كوب زجاجي		Would you like a glass of water?	



الاسم	المعني	تعد أو لا تعد	مثال
glass	زجاج	لا يعد	The window's made of unbreakable glass.
a wood		We went for a walk in the woods after lunch.	
wood خشب		لايعد	▶ The house was built of wood but faced with brick.
يعد عمل فني /عمل أدبي/ مصنع a work		يعد	We need to build a new work in this area.
work لا يعد العمل		لا يعد	I've got so much work to do.

🗿 يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالآتي:

أنواء أدوات التجيزئة Kinds of Partitives

1) General Partitives

ألفاظ التحزئة العامة

باستخدام (a bit of - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه وفي الجمع (bits of - pieces of)

- ✓ I'd like a piece (a bit) of cloth / bread / advice.
- ✓ I'd like two pieces (bits) of cloth / bread / advice.

2) Special Partitives

ألفاظ التحزئة الخاصة

الكلمة	المعني	تأتي مع
a cup of	فنجان من	(tea / water / coffee)
a glass of	كوب من	▶ (juice / water / lemonade)
a bottle of	زجاجة من	(water / juice / milk / oil /)
a jar of	برطمان من	▶ (jam / honey)
a pair of	زوج من	(boots / shoes / gloves / scissors / socks)
a loaf of	رغيف من	▶ bread
a bar of	قطعة من	▶ (chocolate / soap /)
a kilo of	کیلو من	(sugar / pasta / flour / cheese)
a bag of	ڪيس من	▶ (pasta / flour / rice)
a tin of	علبة من	b (beans / sardine)
a slice of	شريحة من	▶ (bread / meat / cake)
a packet of	لفه من	(tea / coffee / biscuits)
a sheet of	فرخمن	(paper)
a tube of	انبوبة من	toothpaste / cream / blood)
a dish of	طبق من	(chicken / meat / rice /)

- 🗐 وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة.
- √ two sheets of paper two pairs of shoes two jars of jam five cups of tea two loaves of bread two slices of meat six bars of chocolate.
 - 🗐 للحظ الفعل بعد الفاظ التجزئة:

يأتي بعده فعل مفرد		يأتي بعده فعل جمع		
a kilo of sugar	is	six kilos of sugar	are	
a jar of jam	was	two jars of jam	were	
a cup of tea	has Inf. + s	five cups of tea	have	
a pair of shoes		pairs of shoes	Inf.	





🕥 العبارات الدالة على الكمية والمبالغ المإلية والزمن والثمن والمسافة والوزن ودرجات الحرارة تعامل معاملة المفرد مع الفعل:

- ✓ Ten million pounds is a lot of money.
- √ Fifty litres of petrol fills my car.
- √ Five kilometers is a long way to walk.
- ✓ Two hours is a long time to wait.

◊ لاحظ الفعل مع:



a number of نعل جمع the number of فعل مفرد



- ✓ The number of people in Egypt is in increase.
- ✓ A number of boys have left their books.

◊ لاحظ الفعل مع:



فعل مفرد + اسم جمع + One of the



- ✓ One of the players was injured.
- ✓ One of the spokes of my bicycle was broken.

@ لاحظ ان:

no = not....any

✓ I have no money.

= I don't have any money.

√ There is no water.

- = There isn't any water.
 - اذا جاء رابط أو تعبير بين الأسماء:
 - اللحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل غالباً ما يكون جمع 🗐

and / both

- ✓ Both Jana and Toka are from Beni Suef.
- ✓ I and my friend have established a new company.

🧻 للحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول

as well as / besides / in addition to / along with

- ✓ I as well as he study hard.
- √ He as well as I studies hard.
- الأاني الفعل منه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني 🗐

not only....but also..... / ...or... / either.....or..... / neither....nor......

- √ Neither Toka nor the students are here.
- ✓ Neither the students nor Toka is here.
- ✓ Either the library or bookstores are open.
- ✓ Either the bookstores or the library is open.

Wise Saying "Never

"Never apologize for having high standards.

People who really want to be in your life will

rise up to meet them."

لا تعتذر أبداً عن تميُّزك عمن حولك . إن من يريدون حقاً أن يكونوا في حياتك سيرتفعون ليلتقوا بك

GIANTS





	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	ł:		
1)	There are	students in this school.			
•	@ many	b much	© a lot	d lots	
2)	There seve	eral boys playing in the i	middle of the road.		
	@ was	b were	© had	d hav	e
3)	There are	people here this mornin	g.		
	0	(b) lots of	© much		ot .
		a in the cup?" "No, the		_	
	@ much	b many	© a lot	d son	ne
	_	. school?" "No, it isn't		<i>•</i>	
	@ children's	_	© childrens'	d chil	dren
	and the same of th	the corner is my		a	
		b father's car		(d) car	s the father
		nas friends in to		(1)	
	@ much	(b) a lot	© any	d ma	ny
8)	10 m = 10 m	es here are very nice.	O the set		
٥١	a. these	(b) this	© that	d tho	se
	Is there bo		0 =		
	a many	b an	© a	d son	1 e
10)		interesting people here			
441	any	•	© much	d an	
11)		book? Yes, I'm reading .		_	
40)	an Thomas and	b any	© some	d a	
		cups of tea on the table	_		20
	•	b an	© a	d son	ie
13)	(a) much	re arevery nice (b) ones	© some	d any	,
1/1	•	d papers in this country	•	_	
14)	a any	b some	© much	(d) an	•
15)	•	resting newspaper.			
10)	(a) any	b an	© a	(d) son	ne
40)	Fill in gap:	·11 ·	0		
•		milk in my coffee, pleas			
•		nation have you got from			
18)	I have prok	olem. Can you help me?	, , ,		
19)	Many people	reading this book ev	ery month.		
20)	The children	very good yesterday			
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:			
21)	The group has diff	erent opinions.			[
,	• .	were sitting on chairs.	ž.		[
		have you drunk today?			[
		n the book are torn.			[
25)	The people in our	group was watching the	e film.		[







7	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:	
1)	We haven't got	money to buy a ne	w car yet.	
		b too much	© too many	d some
2)	Have they got	flat?	•	
	a lot of	b an	© a	d some
		dren in the park, weren		
	@ were a lot of	b were a lot	© was a lot	d was lots of
4)	There only	a little coffee in the cup	0.	
	@ was	b were	© had	d have
5)	These books here	are the		
	@ girls' books	b girls's books	© books' girls	d books's girls
- 5	This is the			
		b balls' boys		d ball's boys
7)	There's of	coffee in the coffee made	chine.	
	@ many		© a lot of	d lots
	Which sen			*
		kind b People are kind		d The people kind
		people at the meeting	-	
	@ few	b a little	© any	d little
	people ove			_
	(a) There's a lot of	b There's lots of	© There are a lot o	f d There are much
	1	a cup of tea and	_	
	@ any	b some	© a	d an
		t have pupils.	_	
	@ much	b very	© many	@ a lot of
		ns, he can give me one o		
	@ much	b a little	© a few	d few
	There is in			
		b some hair	© a hair	d any hair
-	•	pular at this university.		(1)
	(a) has	b are	© be	d is
	Fill in gap:			
16)	All the news	good last week.		
17)	the police	know how the accident	happened?	1
18)	How bagg	age do you have?		
		enough to buy a me	al.	
		s of information have yo		† ?
	Find the mistake,		a roda III dilio ropo.	
	-	es the performance last o interview two men abo		[]
		ought for me doesn't fit	_	[]
		to the class today becau		
		v the news, you can read		[] 1 عاملات



الله Mark Advanced Exercises

Choose the co	rrect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
I) There	many wooden houses		
@ was	b were		d had
2) Some species	of animals in	danger of being extinct	t.
(a) is	b are	© was	d has
B) The dead man'	's include no	will.	
a paper	b a paper	© papers	d papyrus
) The teachers,	as well as the headma	aster, to hold a	meeting.
a is wanting	b want	© wants	d are wanting
s) She is	intelligent for this jo	b.	
@ too much	b too many	© too	d enough
i) There is	money in the bank,	I'm afraid.	_
a any	b no	© a lot	d not
') No one knows		. very different lives in p	
@ lead	b leads	© has led	d is leading
S) She lent me	twenty pound no	ote last week.	
a any	b some	© a	d many
) The committee		ment caused a	serious problem.
a has	b have	© was	d were
0) You need	money to travel a		
@ much	b many	© a lot of	d a few
1) I have	money, however I car	n buy my needs.	
@ little	b a little	© few	d many
2) Mai together w	vith her friends	playing football.	
@ is	b are	© am	d were
3) He asked the	electrician to fit		
a light	b a light	_	
4) I want to print	some documents, but	t the printer is out of	•••••
a papers	b paper	• • •	© many papers
15) The passenge	rs' luggage so	earched carefully at the	airport customs.
@ was	b has	© were	d had
Fill in gap:			
6) We hardly hav	e bread left ir	n the kitchen.	
7) The principal a	along with teachers	going to the cam	ıp.
	books on shelf. Th		
	gave mevery	_	
	-		
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	tle called a he	eru.	
Find the mista	ake, then correct it:		
22) Your face look 23) Toka as well a			
25) The boss not t	he workers have the	final sav.	[





الضمائي Pronouns

الضمير عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم بدلا من اللسم وتحل محله وبمكن تقسيم الضمائر إلى :

1) Subject 2) Object **Pronouns Pronouns** ضماك المفعما

3) Possessive **Pronouns**

4) Reflexive pronouns

Demonstrative **Pronouns**

6) Indefinite **Pronouns**

7) Relative **Pronouns**

العرس مكا الجعول جيماً

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة	
	me	my	mine	myself	
هو He	him	his	his	himself	
هي She	her	her	hers	herself	
هذا (لغير العاقل) It	it	its		itself	
انت/انتم You	you	your	yours	مفرد Yourself جمع Yourselves	
They 🙀	them	their	theirs	themselves	
نعن We	us	our	ours	ourselves	
واحد / أي شخص One	one	one's	one's	oneself	

ضمائے الفاعے (1) Subject Pronouns

	he	she	it	You	They	We	One
انا	ھو	هي	هذا (لغير العاقل)	انت / انتم	هم	نحن	وأحد/أي شخص

هي الضمائر التي تحل محل الفاعل أي تأتي أول الجملة للحظ أن الضمير في اللغة الإنجليزية يجب أن يكون بارزاً ولكنه في العربية قد يكون بارزا أو مستترا.

أنا ونحن (we , l) يسمى ضمير المتكلم 🗐

✓ I hit the ball.

- √ We like football.
 - أ الضمير هم (They) جمع للعاقل وغير العاقل أ

- √ They speak English.
- ✓ I like lions because they are strong.
- ألب: (They) وجمعها (It, She, He) تحل محل الفاعل الغائب (They) تحل محل الفاعل الغائب
- ✓ Ali (He) is a good pupil.

- √ Jana (She) speaks English well.
- ✓ My friends (They) go to the stadium.
- √ New cities (They) are built every year

- ✓ A cat (It) likes fish.
 - 🗐 ضمير المخاطب أنت / أنتم (you) في حالة المفرد وحالة الجمع لها نفس التكوين.
- ✓ What are you doing, Ali?

مفرد (أنت)

✓ What are you doing, my friends?

جمع (أنتم)



Giants' Gramm

2) Object Pronouns

ضمائر المفعول

me	him	her	īt	you	them	us	one
انا	ھو	ھي	هذا (لغير العاقل)	انت/انتم	هم	نحن	وأحد/أي شخص

هي الضوائر التي تحل محل المفعول أي تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الحر وللحظ أن الضمير في اللغة الإنجليزيةُ يجب أن يكون بارزاً ولكنه في العربية قُد يكون بارزا أو مستترا.

✓ Ali visited me yesterday.

√ I don't like dogs (them).

🗐 تستخدم بعد by في الجملة المبنية للمجهول

تستخدم بعد الفعل في الحملة المبنية للمعلوم

- I was visited by Ali (him). ✓ The letter was written by her.
 - 🗐 تستخدم ىعد حروف الحر

- ✓ I spoke with her.

- √ They laughed at him.
- ✓ He apologized to us. 🧻 الضمير (you) له نفس التكوين في حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به
- ضمير فاعل . You look pale ✓

- سمر مفعول? Did I see you before
- ones) له نفس التكوين في حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به وجمعه (ones) الضمير
- One (You) should work hard to succeed. تأتى بمعنى المرء ويمكن وضع you مكانها
- تحل (one) محل اسم عندما یأتی بعد صفة This loaf is stale; please give me a fresh one.
 - ✓ Are there any new books? I've read all these old ones.
 - ستخدم one مع صفات الإشارة للتعبير عن مقارنة أوانتقاء . That lute is broken; I'll take this one
- ✓ Don't use those colours; use these ones.
 - 🗐 الضمير (🔰 له نفس التكوين في حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به ✓ I saw it in the zoo yesterday. ضمير مفعول
 - ال was a very big car. ضمير فاعل
 - 📋 يتحول الضمير (it) في حالة الجمع إلى (them) للفاعل (them) للمفعول
 - ✓ The bird (It) lives in a nest.
- √ The birds (They) live in nests.

√ I saw a bee (It).

√ I saw bees (them).

الدظ استخدام الضمير (﴿) من دالة الفام المدفول المعامل علم كما المعامل المعامل

		السندار السيرار السيلير ۱۱۰۰ مي عاما الماعل والسعول به صه يتي.
	غير العاقل	▶ There is no water in it.
	الحيوانات (المتوحشة) ولكن لاحظ فى حالة الحيوانات الإليفة ممكن استخدام he - she	The dog barked at me. It was sitting in the dark.My kitten is ill. She doesn't eat.
₫,	الجماد	▶ This is my new flat, I bought it last week.
يمكننا استخدام it	العاقل	
i.i.	الأفعال المتعلقة بالأحوال الجوية	It is beautiful weather.
<u>ंद</u>	تعبيرات الزمن	It is six o'clock.
		It is five miles to the station.
೩		It is nice to see you well.
		▶ It is pleasure to meet you, sir.
	لتأكيد كلمة أو عبارة	▶ It is you who did that.
		▶ He is trying to master him, he won't find it easy.
		It is a year since I met her.



3) Possessive Pronouns

ضمائب اللكية

Possessive Adjectives

my	his	her	its	your	their	our	one's
mine	his	hers	_ ↓	222222222222222222222222222222	***************************************	-	one's
ملكي	ملکه	ملكها		ملكك	ملكهم	ملكنا	ملكك

ضمائر الملكية تحل محل الأسماء وبذلك تستعمل بدلاً من الأسماء التي تشير إليها

🗐 يأتي بعد صفات الملكية اسم:

√ This is my new car.

√ This is his mobile

√ I didn't see her cat.

✓ The hen is sitting on its nest.

🗐 لا بأتى بعد ضوائر الملكية اسم

✓ This car belongs to me. It's mine.

√ This car belongs to Ali. It's his.

√ This car belongs to Aya. It's hers.

✓ This book is ours.

✓ You will break its legs.

🗐 للحظ التركيب التإلى:

 a / an صفة ملكية = ضمير ملكية + (of اسم جمع) of اسم مفرد a / an √ They are friends of mine (my own).

= They are my friends.

✓ He is a husband of hers (her own).

= He is her husband.

🗐 بمكننا التعبير عن الملكية بأكثر من صيغة

✓ This is Toka's book

= This is her book.

= This book is Toka's.

= This book is hers.

= This book belongs to Toka.

4) Reflexive pronouns

myself	himself	herself	itself	yourselves	themselves	ourselves	oneself
بنفسي	بنفسه	بنفسها	بنفسه (غير عاقل)	بنفسك/بأنفسكم	بأنفسهم	بأنفسنا	بنفسه

- 🗐 نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة في حالة ان يكون الفاعل هو نفسة المفعول
- √ You can blame yourself.
- ✓ Ali and Hani injured themselves when they fell off their bicycles.
- ✓ She fell over, but she didn't hurt herself.

🧊 نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة للتأكيد على من قام بالفعل وتأتي بعد الفاعل أو المفعول

✓ I myself did the job.

= I did the job myself.

- ✓ The president himself gave her the award.
 - = The president gave her the award himself.

🗐 يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بمعنى (بدون مساعدة من أحد / بمفردة) عندما يسبق بـ by ويساوى

(on قيكية على +own)

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help by himself =on his own = alone = without any help

- √ I went to the cinema alone (on my own) (by myself) (without any help).
- ✓ Did you paint that picture on your own (alone) (by yourself) (without any help)?



Ciants' Cramma

الحظ الاختلاف ما سن:

on my own = by myself = alone of my own = belong to me

تعبر عن قيامي بالشيء بمفردي الملكية تعبرعن / ملكي

- ✓ I learned to use this computer on my own.
- = This car belongs to him √ He has a car of his own 🗐 لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر التالية (with - next to - behind - about) ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول:
- √ Can I sit next to you?

✓ I will take you with me.

after / for / on يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر 🧃

- ✓ The children are old enough to look after themselves.
- √ She can depend on herself.

الأنصائر المنعكسة عادة مع بعض الأفعال مثل:

shower / shave / dress / relax / wash / wake up / sit down / stand up

√ I showered and dressed.

ضمائر الإشارة م Demonstrative Pronouns

this	that	these	those
هذا	تاك	<u>ھۇلاء</u>	أولئك
للمفرد القريب	للمفرد البعيد	للجمع القريب	للجمع البعيد
بعدها فعل مفرد	بعدها فعل مفرد	بعدها فعل جمع	بعدها فعل جمع

- 🧻 تشير ضمائر اللشارة إلى الأشياء التي تدل عليها وتميزها وتحددها أو تدل على الأشياء لتحديدها
- ✓ This is the one I want.
- √ He had told her off. That's why she was so upset.
- √ These are my books.
- √ Those were their bags.
- 🗐 تستخدم كضمائر إذا حلت محل الاسم أو تكون صفات اشارة إذا جاء بعدها اسم
- ✓ This is my hat. ضمير
- ✓ This book is interesting.

6) Indefinite Pronouns

الضمائر غير المحددة

تستخدم للتعبير عن أشخاص أو أشياء أو أماكن غير محددة:

	everybody	کل فرد	everything	ڪل شيءِ
every	everyone	کل فرد	everywhere	في كل مكان
	someone	شخصما	something	شيءما
some	somebody	شخص ما	somewhere	مكان ما
	anybody	أى فرد	anywhere	في أي مكان
any	anyone	أى فرد	anything	أى شيءِ
	no one	لا أحد	nothing	لاشيء
no	nobody	لاأحد	nowhere	لا مكان

each	ڪل	غرد + another	أخر (للمفرد) و	some	بعض
every	کل	جمع + other	أخر (للجمع)	any	أى
all	ڪل	others	الآخرون (بدون اسم)	many	كثير (للعدد)
both	كلاهما	the other	الآخر	few	قليل (للعدد)
neither	7	such	مثل	much	كثير (للكمية)
either	أي	none	لا أحد	less	قليل(للكمية)



all

الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد أو جمع طبقا هل بعد أولا بعد

- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد لا يعد + all (1 ⇒ All the money was stolen.
- 2) all / all of + فعل جمع + اسم جمع ⇒ All (of) my students are dates.
- all of + ضمير = ضمير مفعول + all ⇒ All of them are intelligent. = They all are intelligent.

both

- 1) both (of) فعل جمع + اسم جمع
- 2) both....and+ فعل جمع
- قعل جمع + ضمير مفعول + (of) فعل جمع + both + ضمر =
- استخدام (both) بدون (of) كضمير فاعل (4

- اللسم والفعل بعدهادائماً جمع وتشير إلى شخصين أو شيئين
- **Both** books are useful.
- ⇒ Both Jana and Toka are clever.
- ⊃ Both of us gre tall.
- ⇒ = We both gre tall.
- □ I saw Jana and Toka. Both were sad.

each

الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد (إلا في حالة اسم جمع فعل مفرد بعد (لا يأتي قبلها حال) تشير إلى شخصين أو شيئين

- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + each
- **Each student** here is clever.
- فعل مفرد + اسم جمع أو ضمير + each of
- ⇒ Each of them(students) is clever.
- تستخدم كضمير فاعل each
- ⊃ I have two sisters. Each has long hair.

everv

of الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد وتشير إلى أكثر من اثنين ولا تستخدم كضمير ولا يأتي بعدها

- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + every
- قبل الوقت (3

- Description Every student here is clever.
- 2) (nearly almost...) every يأتي قبلها حال Nearly every student was lazy.
 - I visited my relatives every week.

either

🗐 الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد إلا في حالة of يكون الاسم جمع والفعل مفرد

فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + either

- ⇒ Either book has useful information.
- 2) either of + اسم جمع + اسم فعل مفرد أو جمع
- ⇒ Either of my students gets the full mark.
- 3) either + فاعل + or + فاعل الثاني + or فاعل الثاني + or فاعل + فاعل 🗢 Either Jana or her friends are active

either + فعل منفى (4

⊃ I didn't like either of my photos.

Neither

- 🗐 الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد إلا في حالة of يكون الاسم جمع والفعل مفرد:
- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + neither

- ⇒ Neither student is clever.
- فعل مفرد +اسم جمع + neither of
- ⇒ Neither of my students is clever.
- قاعل الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني + nor + فاعل+ 3) neither
- ⇒ Neither Mai nor her friends are lazy.

- يمكن استخدمها كضمير (4
- ⇒ I phoned Mona and Mai, but neither was available.



nts' Grammar

Important Notes

◘ لاحظ أن الضمائر التالية تأخذ دائماً فعل مفرد وعند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير مفرد أيضا

(something / nothing / anything / everything)

- Everything has been prepared as it should have been planned.
- I saw something in the garden. I think, it is a wild animal.

(they - them - their) الضمائر التالية تأخذ دائما فعلاً مفرداً ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمر نستخدم ضمر حمم أو استخدام (he or she) مكان الفاعل (him or her) مكان المفعول

(someone /somebody / no one / nobody / anyone /anybody / everyone / everybody

- Somebody has cleaned the house. They have watered the flowers.
- Each student in the group is doing their best.
- No one was in the house. They (He or She) were in the party.
- Somebody stole my wallet. I didn't recognise them (him or her).

1 لاحظ الفرق بين



(= one more) اسم مفرد بعد + another



- This tea is nice. I'd like another cup.
- I'd like to stay here for another two days.





- I need to research this with other classmates.
- There was certainly other information.



- Some people are rich; others are poor.
- Some writers are greater than others.



- She has two kittens. one is black and the other is all white.
- He had his hat in one hand and a bunch of flowers in the other.

(Either..or../Neither..nor../Not only..but also..) لاحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

- Neither Ahmed nor I am happy.
- Not only Jana but also they are late.
- Either I or Ava is out of the competition.

الحظما يأتى بعد:

each - every - either - neither (is - was - has - V+S فعل مفرد قد يكون) each - either - neither + of + (اسمع جمع) + (is - was - has - V+S فعل مفرد قد يكون)

- Every student here is clever.
- Each of students is clever.
- Either book has useful information.
- Either of my students gets the full mark.
- Neither of my students is clever. Neither student is clever. Every student here is clever. (every of لا يمكننا قول)
- ممائــرالوصــل (Relative Pronouns

سوف يتم شرحهم في جزء منفصل





	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c oı	d:	and the same of	
1)	The little boy is pla	ying with toys.		,	
	(a) her	b its	© their	d his	
2)	They knew all abou	ut my friend and			
	(a)	b me	© we	d oui	•
3)	There are many pe	ople in houses	here.		
	(a) that	b those	© this	d the	se
4)	Helen asked	to get some milk.			
	@ me	b mine	CI	@ my	
5)	books are	new.			
	@ You	b Your	© Yours	d You	ırself
6)	girls are p	laying basketball.			
	(a) Those	(b) That	© This	d The	ere
7)	They are walking v	vith puppies.			
	(a) them	b theirs	© they	d the	eir
8)	We finished our ho	mework. We finished it	by		
	a ourselves	b themselves	© yourself	d her	self
9)	I came here with Jo	ohn and			
	(a) her	b she	© he	d the	у
10)	The little girl had a	cup of tea in ha	ands.		•
	(a) his	b your	© her	d our	•
11)	The doctor told Hu	ida and Nabil to take ca	re of		
	@ ourselves	b herself	© themselves	d you	rself
12)	Mai and Mona are	going to the cinema with	ı friends.		
	(a) her	b its	© their	d her	S
13)	Each of the books	a different colo	ur.		
	(a) has	b are	© were	d ha	ve
14)	People were stand	ling onside of th	ne road.		
	@ each	(b) all	© both	d nei	ther
15)	Ali's coming to visi	itin September.			
	@ we	b us	© ours	d our	
	Fill in gap:				
16)	is very ho	t today and windy.		The second secon	
17)	Yes. I saw	in town last week. He's	looking really well.		
	Let give yo				
	He cut witl				
-					
20)		ds is kind so I like them	•		
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:			
21)	These bag is mine.				[
22)	Here is my new car	r, I bought her recently.	i.		[
	Ali met each of our				Ţ
	Do you want every				[
25)	Those pupils in the	ese class are not clever.			[



2 Intermediate Exercises Mark

Choose the c	orrect answer from a, b	, c or d:	
1) Go and see	and his friend.		
(a) he	b them	© they	d him
2) This island be	longs to who w	ere here first.	
(a) they	b them	© their	d those
3) We are much	better than at for	ootball.	
(a) them	b they	© their	d there
4) "Did you read	the two articles?" "Ye	es, but good."	
	e b neither was		d none was
5) Would you like	e cup of tea?		
the others	b other	© others	d another
6) There is only	one person who	o could help us.	
① the others	b other	© others	d another
	ompaniesa loca		
@ are support	ing b supporting	© supports	d support
8) If I don't wear	my glasses, everything	ı just a blur.	
@ was	b has	© is	d are
9) Neither restar	urant expensive	9.	
@ has	b are	© were	d is
10) Neither Musta	afa nor his friends	wealthy.	
@ has	ⓑ is	© are	d have
11) We had two ke	eys but would o	pen the door.	
a either		© nor	d both
12) Is this your sis	ster's? -No, it isn't	••••••	_
@ of her	b hers	© of she	d she's
13) The two girls	were sitting in front of	••••••	_
@ we	b us	© our	d ours
14) "Whose is tha	t car?" "I think it's		_
@ of them	-	•	d their
15) He co	ould not read it although	n he had written it.	
a herself	b his	© him	d himself
Fill in gap:			
16) Those are the	children and that is	school.	
17) Is that bicycle	e yours? - No, it isn't	••••••	
	too small. We need a bi		
•	s husband?" "Yes, he's		
	each of the houses		
	take, then correct it:	paintea winte.	
		vala	
	l Ahmed each has a bic	-	[r
	t everybody now like th	at nouse.	[
	except this one.		[
	rite in a different way. ose colours; use this on	26	լ Ր
20) Don Luse Inc	, se coloui s, use ulis oli	C3.	L



3 Advanced Exercises فيم نفسك 25

	Choose the correc	ct answer from a, b, c or	' d:			
1)	She went to the cin	nema with a friend of				
	(a) hers	b his	© her's	d s	he	
2)	I'd like con	ne with us to the disco.				
	a she to	b her to	© her	d	he	
3)	Is anybody there?	- Yes,				
	(a) it is	b there is	© she is	d	here are	
4)	What do you think	of those two?" "Well, to	tell you the truth, I	like		
	a neither of them	b either of them	© either	d	neither of they	
5)	I couldn't find the s	tation, so I asked some	one if could	dir	ect me.	
	(a) them	b she	© he	(d)	hey	
		ee the player		100000		
	•	b either/or		(d)	neither/and	
9		when I saw the ex	The second secon			
	@ myself	0	© mine	(d)	ny	
		e able to manage				
	a by herself		© by itself	d	o herself	
•	Each of the					
	@ men is		© man have	(d)	man has	
,	I have lot o					
	(a) other		c the others	(d)	others	
		at he doesn't want				
	(a) nobody	b anybody	© somebody	d) I	no one	
12)	"I can't remember	what she said." " (b) Nor can I	"	0	0 808	
			© Me neither	d) <i>l</i>	Me either	
	Well, you haven't a				9.08	
	a neither of us	0	•	(d)	either of we	
		plays basketba			***	
		b both	© either	(d)	neither	
,		on with a friend of			· •ala	
	(a) he	(b) we	© his	d	115'5 	
	Fill in gap:					
16)	We didn't see	of the children.				
17)	The Queen	. came to see us.				
18)	18) He went to the partyhis own.					
19)	19) Old Mr Mazen often cuts shaving.					
	20) We've got two books to read, but I haven't readyet.					
	Find the mistake,	·	, co.c. , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,			
241					_ ·	
		f the boy has a pen. m a rich man, but I don'	'+		[
		dresses, but either of th		1		
		sion with a friend of him		U o		
	25) This loaf is stale: nlease give me a fresh it					



3) Verb

الفعل عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم للتعبير عن حركة أو حالة أو حدث وتأتى بعد الفاعل ويمكن من خلاله تحديد زمن الجملة. ✓ I will take you with me.

- ✓ He works hard.
- ✓ I am eating pasta now.

- الحظ ان الفعل بتبع الفاعل من حبث المفرد والحمع
- (are were have infinitive) اذا كان الفاعل حمع بأتى بعده فعل حمع
 - (is was has v+s) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد يأتي بعده فعل مفرد
- √ I suppose you are right.

✓ Students are intelligent.

- √ He has gone home.
 - اللبد ان يكون الفعل في اللغة الإنجليزية ظاهراً بخلاف اللغة العربية التي يمكن ان يكون الفعل مستتراً مثل:
- ✓ He is a teacher. هه مدرس

√ He is a man. إنه رجل

✓ They gre doctors. هم اطباء

اشكال الفعال ال

						3	
الشكل	المعني	التكوين			أمثلة		
Infinitive	مصدر	The second state of the second of the second state of the second s		eat	drink	have	be
Present	مضارع	التصريف الأول للفعل قد يشبه المصدر مع الجمع أو اضافة S مع المفرد	visit (s)	eat (s)	drink(s)	have has	am-is-are
Past		او يكون عير منتظم		ate	drank	had	was-were
Past Participle	اسم المفعول	التصريف الثالث للفعل باضافة ed أو يكون غير منتظم	visited	eaten	drunk	had	been
Present Participle	اسم القاعل	اضافة ing اخر الفعل	visiting	eating	drinking	having	being

- 🗐 للحظ ان : أشكال المضارع والماضي تسمى الأفعال Finite Verbs لأنَّها محددةِشكل ِ الفاعل أي يتغير شكلها بتغير الفاعل المحدودة من حيث الأفراد والجمع يتغير شكلها في الماضي عن الحاضر.
- 🗐 للحظ ان : أشكال المصدر infinitive واسم المفعول Past participle واسم الفاعل Present participle يسمى بِالْفَهُا فَير المحدودة Non-finites or Infinities فير المحدودة إلى المحدودة Non-finites وأون الحملة.



- Ali speaks English fluently.
- speaks فعل بسيط يتكون من جزء واحد فقط (في زمن الضارع البسيط)
- ▶ She visited us yesterday.

- visited فعل بسيط يتكون من جزء واحد فقط (في زمن الماضي البسيط)
- He is reading a novel. is reading فعل مركب يتكون من جزئين (فعل مساعد is + فعل اساسي reading
- I have been studying English all day.
- have been studying فعل مركب يتكون من ثلاث أجزاء
- (فعل مساعد have+ فعل مساعد been+ فعل اساسي have+
- 🗐 ويمكننا تقسيم الافعال إلى نوعان الأفعال اللازمة والأفعال المتعدية.





______ الأفعال اللازمة: وتسمي أفعال لازمة لأنها <mark>تؤدي</mark> معنى كاملا بذاتها دون أن يتعدى أثره إلى مفعول به علي سبيل المثاا :

say die fall complain happen collapse disappear appear

المنعدية: وتسمي أفعال متعدية لأنها <mark>لا تؤدي</mark> المعنى مكتملاً بذاتها ولابد من مفعول به حتى يكتملً وللبد من مفعول به حتى يكتملً معناها مثل:

tell encourage defeat give create obev visit complete **Helping Verbs** الأفعال الساعدة Verb to be Verb to have Verb to do محموعة أفعال يكون مجموعة أفعال بمتلك محموعة أفعال يفعل الأفعال الناقصة

يتم اختيار الفعل المساعد المناسب من اللربع افعال السابقة على حسبِ الزمن الذي يصاغ فيه فعل الجملة، وعلى حسب فاعله.

- He is playing tennis now. مضارع مستمر) حديد زمن الفعل.
- He isn't playing tennis now.

 □ n't / not بعد الفعل. □ n't / not بعد الفعل. □
- Is he playing tennis now? 😊 تستخدم في السؤال بتقديم الفعل المساعد علي الفاعل.
- Tennis is being played now by him. ثستخدم في المبنى للمجهول بإضافة V. be للفعل وبعده التصريف الثالث

Verb to be

Infinitive	Present	Past		Present Participle
المصدر	مصارع (التصريف الأول)	ماضي (النصريف الناني)	التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	اسم الفاعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being



- 🧊 يأتي مع الفاعل المفرد (am is was) أما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ (are were).
 - ٧. be للحظ إننا يمكننا استخدام 🧻
- 🗸 I am not a doctor, I am a teacher كفعل اساسي بمعني يكون أو كان.
- واستخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل علي الزمن أو النفى أو المجهول وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد و يأتى بعدهم [
- ✓ She isn't studying at the moment.
- √ I was doing my homework.
- √ They were given a good lesson yesterday.
 √ Are you watching TV now?
- تستخدم be المصدر بعد اللفعال الناقصة أو الأفعال التي تتبع بـ to كفعل أساسي بمعني يكون أو فعل مساعد في المحمول.
 - √ Will you be with us tomorrow?
- √ They will be playing football tomorrow.
- ✓ The city will be built in 2030.
- √ The race is expected to be canceled.

ولكل طرسي اللق الأطيارة



تستخدم **be** المصدر لتوجبة أمر أو نستخدم **Never be** / **Don't be** في النهي وهنا تكون فعل أساسي بوعني كن / لا تكن

✓ Be always in time

✓ Don't be shy

- ✓ Never be in a hurry.
 - أو اعطاء أوامر وتعليمات بمعنى من المفروض ان be to + inf. تستخدم
- ✓ Nobody is to know.

- √ You gre not to do that.
- التكوين المبنى للمجهول في زمن المضارع المستمر (am is are was were) تستخدم (being) بعد والماضى المستمر
 - The meal was being cooked at 7 o'clock yesterday.
 لتكوين المبنى للمجمول في زمن المضارع التام والماضي التام (been) بعد (been) بعد (been) لتكوين المبنى للمجمول في زمن المضارع التام والماضي التام
 This novel has been published since I was ten.

Verb to have

Infinitive	Present	Past	Past participle	Present Participle
المصدر	مضارع(التصريف الأول)	ماضي (التصريف الثاني)	التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	اسم الفاعل
have	have - has	had	had	having



- اما الفاعل المفرد في المضارع (has) اما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ (have) والماضي (had) مع أي صيغة الفاعل الفاعل المفرد في المضارع (had) مع أي صيغة اللفاعل
 - 📋 يمكننا اختصار (has) إلى (s) واختصار (have) إلى (ve) واختصار (had) إلى (d)
 - v. have للحظ اننا يمكننا استخدام

- ✓ I have a car but he has three.
- كفعل اساسي بمعني يمتلك / يتناول / يأخذ/
- و عنده استخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل علي الزمن أو النفى أو المجهول وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد وياتي العدهم التصريف الثالث.
- √ She has got a car.

- √ He has lived here since 2019
- انفی v. have لنفی (don't doesn't didn't) + have نستخدم
 - (hasnt havent hadnt) + P.P على مساعد 🗐
- √ I don't have a flat.
- ✓ Ali doesn't have many friends.
- ✓ Aya hasn't got any sisters.
- ✓ She didn't come because I hadn't called her.

Wise Saying

A guilty conscience needs no accuser الضمير الشاعر بالذنب لا يحتاج لوعظ

> <u>مُّواعد العمالمُـــة</u> للحف الأول والثانى والثان الثنوى



Verb to do

Infinitive	Present	Past		Present Participle
المصدر	مضارع(التصريف الأول)	ماضي (التصريف التاني)	التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	اسم الفاعل
do	do - does	did	done	doing



- أما الفاعل المفرد في المضارع (does) أما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ (do) والماضي (did) مع أي صيغة للفاعل 📋
 - v. do للحظ إننا يمكننا استخدام 🧻
- 🗸 ا do all my homework well. 🗸 I did the right thing. كفعل اساسي بمعني يفعل / يقوم بـ
 - 🗐 واستخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل على الزمن أو النفي وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد ويأتي بعدهم المصدر
- ✓ I don't like smoking. ✓ Did she go to school yesterday?
 - تستخدم (do does did) في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة من أجل النفي أو تكوين سؤال

do	go / visit	إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر (بدون أي أضافات) مع الفاعل الجمع
does	goes/ visits	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (s / es / ies) مع الفاعل المفرد
did	went / visited	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (d /ed / ied) أو فعل ماضى غير منتظم

- تستخدم (do does did) قبل الفعل الأساسي في الجمل المثبتة من أجل لتكوين صيغة توكيد (**تأكيد علي** الكلام)
- ✓ I do trust you.

- ✓ She did hate cowards.
- ✓ He does see life.

Modal verbs

will	can	shall	may	must
would	could	should	might	

- سمیت الأفعال النّاقصـة بهـذا اللسـم لأن بعضـها یوجـد لـه حاضـر وماضـي فقـط ولا یوجـد لـه تصـریف ثالـث (اسـم مفعول) وأیضاً لا یمکن أن تأتی کفعل أساسی بمفردها لابد أن يأتی بعدهم فعل أساسی ليتمم المعنی.
 - وراء الأفعال النّاقصة جميعهم مصدر الفعل (بدون أي اضافات) ومن غير ot
 - (They, You, He, She, It) مقط وتستخدم will مع باقي الضمائر (We) لم الهذي الهذي المعائر (They, You, He, She, It) تستخدم
 - √ I can carry this heavy bag.
- √ You might work much and earn little.
- ✓ We shall get there first.
- ✓ She won't listen to me.

GIANTS WISE

Wise Saying

If you think education is expensive-try ignorance. إذا كنت تعتقد أن التعليم ثمنه باهظ جرب الجهل قد يكون أقل كلفة



Other modals

	have to has to	_ need need to	ought to dare (to)
المضارع	have to + inf. has to + inf.	need to + inf. need + inf.	ought to + inf. dare to + inf.
النفى فى المضارع	don't have to + inf. doesn't have to + inf.	don't need to + inf. doesn't need to + inf. needn't + inf.	ought not to + inf. daren't + inf.
الماضي	had to + inf.	needed to + inf. needed + inf.	
النفى فى الماضي	didn't have to + inf.	didn't need to + inf. needn't have + P.P	سوف يتم شرحهم في جزء منفصل

Important Notes

المساعدة so and neither للحظ استخدام

نستخدم (فاعل + فعل مساعد + so) في الاثبات لتعبر عن قيام الفاعل بما فعله الفاعل الاول نستخدم (فاعل + فعل مساعد + neither) في النفى لتعبر عن عدم قيام الفاعلان بالشيء وتساوي not + either (فعل مساعد + فاعل) = (فاعل + فعل مساعد + nor) = (فاعل + فعل مساعد + neither)

√ "I'm tired." "So am I."

- (= I'm tired too.)
- ✓ Sarah hasn't got a car and neither has Mark.
- ✓ "I don't know." "Neither do I." or "Nor do I." or "I don't either."
 - 🗐 للحظ في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة الأولي نضع (do does did) طبقا للفعل الأساسي
- ✓ "I never read newspaper." "Neither do I." (= I never read newspapers either)
 (عدوما صفة سؤال)
 العظ أن في هذه الحالة نستخدم عد so neither عن معادم العالم المعادم العالم العالم
- ✓ I passed the exam and so did Ali.

(NOT so Ali did.)



Wise Saying

If the plan doesn't work, change the plan, but never the goal.

إذا لم تنجح هذه الخطة .غيّر الخطة،ولكن أبداً لا تغيّر الهدف







ark si puë

25

	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:						
1)	How old is your br	other, Richard? He	ten yesterday.				
,	(a) is	b has	© was	d had			
2)	Little Jimmy is very	/ fast. He's justi	it.				
	(a) to finished	b finished	© finish	d to fini	sh		
3)	The whole cake	eaten by the child	lren last Sunday.				
	a has been	b was	© will be	d is			
4)	Ali, you go	to that pub every day?					
	@ do	b does	© doesn't	d have			
5)	The two boys	sitting in the garden					
	@ was	b were	© had	d have			
6)	-		_				
	(a) Has	b Was	© Does	d Is			
7)	she got a h	_	_	•			
	(a) Have	b Does	© Has	d Is			
8)		rl in the room.					
	@ are	bis	© isn't	d are n	0		
9)	The tables						
	a. are	b will	© have	d does			
10)	The chairi	_		(1)			
4 4 1	a. are	b is	© am	d were			
11	Nada, dow			(A) -!4-			
4.0	@ you sit	b sit you	© sit	d sits			
12	•	ır little daughter yestero		(1) :-			
4.0	@ are	b was	© were	d is			
13	there any		2111	(A) Mana			
4.4	(a) Had	b Have	© Was	d Were			
14	He has no money.		@ I haven't neither		00		
AF	Neither do I		© I haven't neither	u l do l	00		
15	Have you		@ sooing	d saw			
	@ see	b seen	© seeing	W SUVV			
	Fill in gap:						
16	16) The house four rooms.						
17	17) The boys a dog.						
18	18) The children at home all day yesterday.						
19	19) The two girls playing in the park.						
	20) The children very good yesterday.						
	Find the mistake, then correct it:						
24							
) These people here		turday	L.:			
) These two boys ar) Where are they liv	re playing tennis last Sa	turuay.	Γ			
) What do he do at \			Γ	······································		
				Γ			
25	5) Have you all been your breakfast?						



Intermediate Exercises Mark

- Anna		***************************************					
	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
1)	1 to go to N	Madrid last month, on a l	business trip.	and the second of the second o			
	@ must	b had	© have	d has			
2)	How you g	o to the hypermarket to		0			
•	(a) did	(b) will	© shall	d should			
3)	_	what she said	O	© 3113313			
		b Nor can I	© Me neither	d Me either			
		to come next m					
	(a) can	(b) could	© will be	d will be able			
	These people			<u> </u>			
	(a) had	<u> </u>	© have	d were			
	I don't like running	_					
	a I do, either		© Nor do I	d I don't, too			
	I went to Luxor on		9 1131 33 1	a 1 d d 111, 100			
	I didn't either		© Neither did I	@ So did I			
	We breakf	_	C remier did r	3 30 did 1			
•	a were have		© was having	d had			
	John give		C was naving	W Huu			
	(a) Did	(b) Have	© Was	d Is			
	•	work very quickly last n	\smile	U 15			
	(a) am	b had	© did	d was			
	•	eling well. Hele		Was			
	a has to		© must	(d) must to			
		drive a car in my family	•	d must to			
	a was	_					
	•	•	© is	d are			
	Only Hany		@ ia	3			
	_	b was	© is	d were			
		Scotland. Well,	. Tom brook also	A Town by world by a			
		b nor is Tom	© Tom hasn't also	d iom nasht too			
	-	an effort and get up					
		b make	© made	d did			
	Fill in gap:						
16)	I could play chess	when I five.					
17)	Ali doesn't	many friends.					
		_	So mv siste	ır.			
18) My brother is going to enter the Institute. So my sister. 19) I went to the beach on Sunday morning did I.							
	20) I watched TV last night but my sister						
20)			• • • •				
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:					
21)	He does enjoys his	high grades in his exan	ns.	[
22)	We had to helped t	he old man yesterday.		[
23)	The meal was been	n cooked at 7 o'clock ye	sterday.	[
•	You are not do that			[
25)	I never go swimmir	ng in winter, and so do r	ny friends.	[



3 A dvanced Exercises Mark

GAN

anness.				
	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1)	She a show	er every morning be	fore school.	
	@ does	b has	© did	d is
2)	We talking	to James about his e	exam.	
	@ don't	b haven't	© wasn't	d aren't
3)	Where you	yesterday?		
	@ was	b have	© did	d were
4)	We a beaut	iful puppy called Ma	i.	
	@ was	b having	© did	d had
5)	you ever be			
	(a) Do	b Does	© Have	d Did
6)	Are you a student?	- Yes, I		
	(a) am	b have	© is	d 'm not
7)	She didn't see anyo	ne she knew, and	did Ahmed.	
	(a) either	b or	© neither	d too
8)	He saw nobody in the	he room, and you?		
	a neither did I	b so did I	© neither do I	d so do I
9)	you speak	three languages?		
	(a) Do	b Does	© Were	d Are
10)		er homework!	!	
,			y © Sally doesn't too	d nor doesn't Sally
11)		n the hills. Well		
,	a so do l	b neither do I	© nor do I	d so would I
12)	We've never been t	o Italy	_	
,		(b) Neither do I	© Nor have I	d So have I
13)	I would never go th			
		b Me neither	© Neither would I	d I didn't either
14)	0	to the U.S.A last year		
,		b Mine either		d Mine too
15	_	ry morning		
,	a So can I	b Neither can I		d So do I
	Fill in gap:			
16	I forgot to tell my w	rife So I		
•	•	vhere it is ca	an I	
•			AII I.	
	I had a car but he			
19	The meal was	cooked at 7 o'clo	ck yesterday.	
20	I have never been t	to America. Nor	he.	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
21	He felt very ill after	eating that. Neither	did I.	ſ
) I didn't go to Londo		3	[
		lic holiday. You need	In't to get up early.	[
		good sleep. So does		[
	I must to carry this			[





4) Adjectives

الصفيات

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اللسم والضمير وتأتى الصفة قبل الموصوف أو بعد الأفعال التالية:

V. to be - look - seem - sound - appear - go - get - come - become - stay - feel - taste - smell - touch - fall - grow - turn - how

- ► He bought a new flat.
- ✓ She was a clever student. ✓ He is lazy.
- ▶ Toka seems ill.
- ✓ He gets tired quickly.

لا يحدث أي تغيير للصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أوجمَّعاً ، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً (الصفة لاتُجمع، وصفقالمذُ كـّ ر هـ ,أيضاً صفة للمؤنّث)

▶ He is clever.

- √ She is clever.
- √ They are clever.
 - 🖠 للحظ ان الصفة قد تكون:

hope (hopeful - hopeless) / friend (friendly)

تستخرج من اسم باضافة لاحقة suffix

interesting- exciting - boring - amazing

اسم فاعل

interested- excited - bored - amazed

اسم مفعول اسم يستخدم كصفة (لا يجمع الاسم في هذة الحالة).

world news - school girl - girl school - horse race.

a forty-year man - a two-day trip - a ten-day break

رقم وبعده اسم فيكون الرقم صفة للاسم

🗐 للحظ ان يمكننا عكس الصفة باضافة بادئه Prefix

un	im	in	il i	dis	ir
lucky	polite	correct	legal	loyal	regular
unlucky	impolite	incorrect	illegal	disloyal	irregular

ا للحظ عند وضع the قبل الصفة تتحول إلى اسم جمع ويأتي بعده فعل جمع (are - were - have - inf.)

poor	فقير	rich	غني	disabled		معاق
brave	شجاع	the poor	الفقراء	the rich	in a value in a state	الاغنياء
the disabled	المعاقين	the brave	الشجعان			

- [a an] للحظ أن الصفة بمفردها لا يأتي قبلها (a an) أما إذا جاءت قبل الاسم المفرد يعد يأتي قبلها
- ✓ This house is new.

√ It is a new house.

✓ This woman is old.

- ✓ She is an old woman.
- اً للحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي ed والتي تنتهي ing انستخده الصفة التي تنتهي ed كصفة لستقيل الحدث ed • bored - excited - amazed - interested ∙
- - 🥤 للحظ ترتيب الصفات:

а	opinion	size	age	shape	colour	material	
an the	الرأي	الحجم	العمر	الشكل	اللون	المادة الخام	الاسم
some	nice	small	old	round	red	iron	

- ✓ I bought a strong big round black wooden table.
 - 🧻 يمكننا تقسيم الصفات من حيث القوة إلى نوعين:
 - مفات عادية (يمكننا ان يأتي قبلها كلمة very)

hot cold bad large tired angry

(very مفات قویة = صفة عادیة + very لا یمکنا ان یأتی قبلها کلمة very

boiling freezing awful huge exhausted furious

- √ He had been working all day. He was very tired (exhausted).
- ✓ Because of his awful marks, his parents were very angry (furious).





من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين: • صفة قصرة تتكون من مقطع وأحد عند اللفظ مثل: bia slow short tall fast short ٢ صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند اللفظ مثل: comfortable dangerous expensive valuable wonderful important 🗐 تنقسم الصفات من حيث الدرجة إلى ثلاث درجات: الصفة العادية (Positive degree) الغرض منها الوصف وليس المقارنة. وتستخدم في المقارنة (Comparative degree) وتستخدم في المقارنة بين اثنين. وصفة التفضيل (Superlative degree) صفة التفضيل للمقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين. **Positive degree** الصفه العادسة وهي الدرجة العادية أو البسيطة التي تبين الصفة مثل: lucky happy rich 🗐 تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي تعبر عن المساواة في الصفة. as صفة as √ Toka is as clever as Jana. √ Ahmed is as strong as a horse. أ تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكى تعبر عن عدم المساواة في الصفة. as صفة not as √ Ali is not as clever as Ahmed. √ He is not as (so) rich as his brother. 🧻 للحظ انه يوجد طرق اخري للتعبير عن المساواة وعدم المساواة have + the same + اسم + as and + + have + the same + سام be similar to √ Toka is as old as Jana. = Toka has the same age as Jana. = Toka and Jana have the same age. مفية القارنية (Comparative degree وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على شخص أو شيء المقارنة بين اثنين وتتكون كالأتي: er than + صفة قصرة صفة قصرة ٢ ✓ Ali is taller than Ahmed. ✓ Ahmed is shorter than Ali. صفة طويلة C اقل من than صفة طويلة less أكثر من than صفة طويلة Mona is more beautiful than Nada. √ Nada is less beautiful than Mona. Superlative degree صفة التفضيل وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على مجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء وتتكون كالآتي: the + صفة قصيرة صفة قصرة ٢ ✓ Ali is the tallest student in the class. ✓ She is the shortest one. صفة طويلة عن صفة طويلة الأقل the least صفة طويلة الأكثر the most

✓ Mona is the most beautiful girl I have ever seen.



Hants' Grammar

short adjectives الصفات القصيرة						
Positive	الصفات و	Comp	arative		Superlative	
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the	happiest	
heavy	ثقيل	heavier	than	the	heaviest	
old	كبير أو قديم	older	than	the	oldest	
pretty	جميل	prettier	than	the	prettiest	
quick			than	the	quickest	
short		shorter	than	the	shortest	
tall	طويل	taller	than	the	tallest	

الصفات الطويلة long adjectives					
نات Positive	الصة	Comparative	Superlative		
convenient	ملائم	more, less convenient than	the most, least convenient		
dangerous		more, less dangerous than			
important			the most, least important		
valuable	Water State Commence		the most, least valuable		
wonderful	مدهش	more, less wonderful than	the most, least wonderful		

	الشاذة	عض الصفات	:	
وصف positive	comparative	مقارنة e	تفضيل superlative	
good (right)	better	than	the best	لأحسن
bad (wrong)	worse	than	the worst	لأسوأ
many	more	than	the most	لأكثر
much	IIIOI C	titati		
little	less	than	the least	لأقل
	farther أبعد	than	the farthest	لأبعد
far	آکثر / إضافي further	than	the furthest	200,2

[✓] Ali is better than Ahmed.

والمعالي المهاي

(y) بعد الصفة القصيرة اما إذا انتهي بـ (e) وقبلها حرف ساكن توضع (r-st) فقط اما إذا انتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تحول إلى (ier- iest) ولاحظ مضاعفة الحرف الاخير في الصفة إذا انتهت بحرف ساكن وأحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد.

small	▶ smaller than	▶ the smallest	
wide	wider than	the widest	
heavy	heavier than	the heaviest	
big	▶ bigger than	▶ The biggest	

• يمكن استخدام less قبل الصفة القصيرة:

✓ Ali is less fat than Adel.

نتهي ing والتي تنتهي ed والتي تنتهي

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ed كصفة لمستقبل العدث bored - excited - amazed - interested

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ing كصفة للمسبب للحدث (تستخدم مع العاقل والغير العاقل للوصف)

boring - exciting - amazing - interesting

[✓] Ahmed is worse than Ali.



 بمكن أن نحدد مقدار صفة المقارنة بأن يسبقها كلمات مثل: much - a lot - a bit - a little - slightly √ Toka is much more intelligent than Jana. فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + the . فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + the The more I study hard, the higher mark I get. ✓ The harder you study, the more marks you get. ✓ The less you eat, the thinner you become. The faster you run, the earlier you arrive. استعمال صفات المقارنة حالة ثانية بدلاً من صفات التفضيل حالة ثالثة Mai is the most beautiful girl in our family. (No girl) No girl in our family is more beautiful than Mai. • استعمال قاعدة as as بدلاً من صفات الحالة الثالثة أو العكس. ✓ The Nile is the longest river in the word. (as ... as) No river in the world is as long as the Nile. No man in our village is as reliable as Ahmed. (Ahmed ...) Ahmed is the most reliable man in our village. ever استعمال الصفات مع l have ever + p.p + اسم + صفة حالة ثالثة + is the أسم / ضمير Toka is the cleverest girl I have ever seen. Jana is the most beautiful girl I have ever met. never استعمال الصفات مع اسم + than + اسم + حالة ثانية + than اسم ✓ I have never met a more beautiful girl than Jana. √ I have never met a girl as beautiful as Jana the ...adj.er of the two √ Toka is the taller of the two girls. @ لاحظ استخدام (most) بدون (the) وهنا تكون بمعنى (very): √ This novel was most interesting. ✓ I love all my family, but my mum most of all. بعد صفات اللكية يستخدم التفضيل (most - least - worst - best) بدون the ✓ His most popular book is Giants. √ Her best novel is "Oliver". الأحظ الفرق بين older - elder: (أكبر من) داخل الأسرة لا تتبع بـ than elder + noun older + than the eldest + noun ✓ He is my elder brother. √ Toka is older than Mai. الأحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how ولكن الاسم بعد what صفة + How How old How much How heavy How high How tall = What + اسم What age What price What weight What height الاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how ولكن الاسم بعد what الصفة young - old big - small far - near expensive - cheap الاسم size distance age price



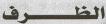
Riants' Gramma

ESES S

- Ali is (much more) happier than me.
- Ali is (more much) intelligent than me.
- I have as (many more) books as Mohamed. 3)
- 4) I have (more much) money than Ali.
- I have (less little) sugar than Ali.
- 6) I bought as (little less) sugar as Ali.
- 7) I looked bad this morning but Mohamed looked (worse - bad).
- 8) I am tall but Ali is (taller the tallest).
- 9) Who is (taller the tallest) Ahmed or Ali?
- 10) Ali is (the younger the youngest) of the two boys.
- 11) Ali is (the youngest the younger) of the three boys.
- 12) Ali is (older elder) than his brother.
- 13) My (elder older) brother is a doctor.
- 14) She is the (elder eldest) of the two daughters.
- 15) She is the (eldest elder) of the three daughters.
- 16) I love all my family but I love my father (most the most).
- 17) I like all subjects but I like English (best the best).
- 18) For (farther further) information, call me.
- 19) I am a (much bit) happier than Ali.
- 20) Ali is a (good better) player in this game than me.

GIANTS

5) Adverb



نستخدم الظروف لوصف الفعل أو الصفة أما الصفة فتصف اسم

🗐 الحال أوالظرف غالباً مشتق من الصفة عن طريق إضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

- quiet
- auietly
- slowly
- slow - probable probably

- quick
- quickly
- happy
- happily
- easily - easy
- friendly

→ in a friendly way - manner

🗐 مناك بعض الكلمات تعامل كظرف وكصفة:

hard	جاد/بجد	daily	يومي / يوميا
fast	سريع / بسرعة	weekly	أسبوعي / أسبوعيا
low	منخفض / علي مستوي منخفض	yearly	سنوي / سنويا
high	مرتفع / علي مستوي مرتفع	early	مبكر / في وقت مبكر
nearby	مجاور/بالقرب	late	متأخر / في وقت متأخر
near	قريب / بالقرب	most	كثير من / كثيرا



Wise Saying

A man is known by the company he keeps إنما يعرف المرء بأقرائه



مناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

good	جيد	•	well	بشکل جید
many / much	كثير من	•	a lot	كثيرا
everyday	يومي	•	every day	ڪل يوم
Indoor (outdoor)	داخلي / خارجي	•	indoors (outdoors)	داخل المنزل / خارج المنزل

જો—ાજા કોઇ—ાનુ



ظروف الكيفية

Adverbs of manner

🝵 يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل ويجيب عن السؤال بـ (كيف How) يأتي قبل الفعل أو بعد الفعل مثل

✓ How did you do in the exam? - I did very well.

✓ What did the police do?

- The police quickly closed off the area.

well	بطريقة جيده	bravely		badly	بطريقة سيئة
quickly	سريعاً / بسرعة	slowly	بطيئاً / ببطء	wisely	بعكمة

ظــروف المكــان Adverbs of place

تستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان أو اتجاه أو بعد حدوث الفعل مثل:

✓ I will meet her outside.
✓ There is a big factory nearby.

				, ractory meants	•
here	هنا	in	في	near	قريبأ
there	هناك	out	خارجأ	far	بعيدًا
under	تحت	up	أعلى / فوق	abroad	في الخارج
below	تحت / أدناه	down	أسفل	about	حول / حوالي
between	بين	downstairs	الطابق السفلي	ahead	ثلأمام
inside	بالداخل	above	فوق / أعلي	around	حول
nearby	مجاور	across	عبر	back	للخلف
outside	بالخارج	away	بعيدا	backwards	للخلف

ظـــروف الزمــان Adverbs of time

🗊 تشير ظروف الزمان إلى وقت وقوع الحدث وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

✓ I met him yesterday. ✓ I will visit you soon.

yesterday	امس	today	إليوم	then	إذن / ثم
tomorrow	غدأ	still	لا يزال	since	مند
now	الآن	soon	حالاً / قريباً	for	لدة
ago	مند	every	ڪل	already	من قبل
before	قبل	last	السابق	early	مبكرأ
immediately	فورأ	yet	حتى الأن	late	متأخرا

توضع (litis) بين الفعل الأصلي والفعل المساعد أما إذا كان الفعل (be) فعلاً أساسياً توضع بعده:

✓ She is still writing novels.

✓ I am still confused.





ظــروف التكــرار Adverbs of frequency

🗐 تشير ظروف التكرار إلى مدي تكرار الحدث (<mark>عدد المرات</mark>) وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة أو قبل أو بعد الفعل مثل:

✓ I visited my uncle every week (weekly). ✓ I meet my friend once a week.

I VIOICOGIIII G	TICIO COCI Y VI	10011 (1100111).			
once	مرة	always	دائماً	every	ڪل
twice	مرتين	usually	عادة	daily	يوميأ
three times	ثلاث مرات	often	غالبأ	weekly	اسبوعي
occasionally	أحيانأ	sometimes	أحيانا	monthly	شهري
frequently	غالبأ	seldom / rarely	نادرأ	yearly	سنوي
regularly	بإنتظام	hardly a	بالكاد / بصعوب	little	قلمأ
constantly	بشكل ثابت			never	مطلقأ

تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأصلى أو بعد (V. be):

✓ I always get up early.

✓ She is never lazy.



وهي ظروف توضع قبل الصفة أو الظرف بهدف تحديد الدرجة التي وصلت إليها الصفة وتــاتي قبــل (الفعــل - الصــفة --الحال) مثلـ:

✓ He is extremely exhausted.

✓ He spoke extremely rudely.

✓ He is very young.

√ He hardly recognised us.

	,		······································			
fairly	تمامأ	extremely	للغاية	enough	بشكل كافي	
really	حقأ	awfully	بشدة	too	جدأ	
slightly	بشكل طفيف	incredibly	بشكل مذهل	such	جدأ	
a little	قليلأ	amazingly	بشكل مذهل	so	جدأ	
a bit	قليلأ	completely	تمامأ	just	فحسب / توأ	
very	جدأ	totally	تمامأ	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة	
rather	إلى حد ما	absolutely	تمامأ	nearly	تقريبأ	
pretty	إلى حد ما	terribly	بشدة	entirely	كليأ	
quite	إلى حد ما	almost / nearly	تقريبأ	highly	بشكل كبير	

🗐 للحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات العادية:

very - rather - fairly - quite - extremely - little

✓ I'm very (extremely) tired.

✓ Mr Ahmed is a very good teacher.

الدظ أن quite / fairly تعطى معني ايجابي بينما rather تعطى معنى سلبى : 🗐

✓ It is quite cold. (I can bear it.)

✓ It is rather cold. (I can't bear it.)

التخدام الظروف التالية فبل الصفات القوية:

absolutely - completely - entirely - totally

✓ The man was completely exhausted.

✓ Mr Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

🗐 للحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل كل من الصفات القوية والضعيفة:

really - pretty

√ This building is really big / enormous.

الحظ استخدام (enough) بعد الصفة والظـرف وتعطـي معنـي إيجـابي امـاً (too) تســتخدم قبــل الصــفة والظـرف وتعطي معنى سلبي:

✓ He is strong enough to lift this bag.

✓ He is too weak to lift this bag.



الصفات القوية يكون معناها أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية:

Ordinary	عادية	Strong	قوية	Ordinary	عادية	Strong	قوية
Clever	ماهر	brilliant	رائع	old	قديم	ancient	عتيق
angry	غاضب	furious	غضبان جدأ	frightening	مخيف	terrifying	مرعب
bad	سيء	terrible	فظيع	hot	ساخن	ن boiling	في حالة غليا
big	ڪبير	enormous	ضخم	tired	متعب	exhausted	مرهق
happy	سعيد	delighted	مسرور	unusual	غير عادي	incredible	خيالي

ظرف الإثبات او النفي

Adverbs of affirmation & negation

ظروف تستخدم للثبات أو نفى الحدث:

✓ Surely, I will come. ✓ Indeed, I hope to come.

yes	نعم / أجل	indeed	واقعا / في الواقع	not	3
certainly	يقينا / بالتأكيد	by all means	اطلاقأ	any	أي
surely	بالتأكيد / تأكيداً	undoubtedly	لا شك في	no	ڪلا
verily	يقيناً / حقاً	obviously	بوضوح	never	أبدأ
definitely	بالتأكيد	×		truly	صدقأ

ظروف المقارنـة والتفضيل Comparative and Superlative Adverbs

يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة

الظروف العادية (المساواه وعدم المساواه) The positive adverbs





- ✓ Ali speaks French as well as Ahmed.
- √ Mona expressed her opinion as clearly as she could.

② The comparative adverb

-		seconos de marco de la compansión de la co				3
			ظرف قصير	+	than	~
	more	+	ظرف طويل	+	than	
	less	+	ظرف طويل	+	than	

✓ I know you better than him.

√ We came rather than he did.

ظرف التفضيل

ظرف المقارنة

3 The superlative adverb

the	+	(est) ظرف قصیر	~
the most	+	ظرف طویل	
the least	+	ظرف طویل	

🗐 الظروف الشاذة:

badly - ill	بشکل سئ / بشکل ردئ	worse than	the worst
well	بشكل جيد	better than	the best
much	ڪثيراً الله الله الله الله الله الله الله ال	more than	the most
little	نادرأ	less than	the least
late	متأخراً/بتأخر	later than	the latest
far	عنبعد	farther than	the farthest



व्यस्वीह बोर्की हो । सिद्धी

▲ عند استخدام الظروف التي تدل على النفي في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل الساعد يتقدم على الفاعل (صيغة سؤال):

Inversion after negative adverbs						
Seldom	نادرا	Not only but also	ليس فقط بل أيضاً			
Rarely		Scarcely when	لم يكد حتى أن			
Little		▶ Hardly when	لم يكد حتى أن			
Only when	فقط عندما	No sooner than	لم يكد حتى أن			
Only then		▶ On no account	تحت أي ظرف			
Nor	ولا	▶ On no condition	بلا ادنى شرط			

✓ She never visits Luxor.

- = Never does she visit Luxor
- √ He had no sooner studied than he slept.
 - = No sooner had he studied than he slept.

: most / the most كلمة

ظرف / صفة / اسم + the most

تفضيل (الأكثر)



✓ Mai is the most beautiful girl in the class. ✓ I have the most money



ظرف / صفة + very =



√ This book is most interesting.

✓ She behaves most politely.



most of all

√ I like football most of all sports.

√ He likes Hani most of all his friends.

مقارنة وتفضيل الأسماء Comparative and Superlative forms of Nouns

يمكن الاسماء مثل الصفات:

① The positive nouns

(المساواه وعدم المساواه في الاسماء)

اسم لا بعد +



as + few / many as + little / much + as اسم يعد



✓ I have as many books as Nada.

✓ She has as little information as me.

+ as

② The comparative nouns

tive nouns



more + اسم لا يعد / اسم لا يعد / اسم عدد / fewer +

اسم لا يعد

+ than

مقارنة الاسماء



- √ I have more books than Nada.
- √ Nada has fewer books than me (I am).

than

than

√ Mai earns less money than her sister.

(3) The superlative

تفضيل الاسماء



the most

the least

اسم يعد / اسم لا يعد +

the fewest +

اسم يعد اسم لا بعد

- ✓ Toka got the most marks.
- √ Jana did the fewest exercises.
- ✓ Mona had the least furniture.







	Choose the correc	et answer from a, b, c or o	d: *	
	Our football team i			AND THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPER
,		b better than	© best than	d the best
2)	Little Hassan is ve	ry clever. He's t	han his friends.	
,		b more intelligent		(d) intelligentest
3)	The Nile is	river in Africa.	9	
•		b the longest	© longer one	d longest than
4)	My mother's dress	is than my aunt	:'s.	G totigoor man
•	a more long	b longest	© longer	d the longest
5)		from the main road		
•		b farther than		d farthest
6)	What was the	event in your life?	0	
•		b happier	© more happy	d most happy
7)		as as he speak		(
				d well
8)	Please, tell me son	ⓑ <mark>bad</mark> nethingthan thi	s old ioke.	
•	(a) interesting	b less interesting	© more interesting	d the most interesting
9)	I have time	than he does.	©9	9 3
	(a) bigger		© most	d less
		sic I have ever heard.		
		b less beautiful	© the most begutif	ul d) most beautiful
11)	She looked	. and ran away from the	dog.	
		b frightened	© frightening	d frighten
		building I've		
		_	© ever seen	d never saw
		inter is last wint	_	
		(b) as cold	© so cold	d) colder
		tall to be a good ba		
		b extremely		d entirely
15)	Your problem is no	t difficult. It's th	an ours	3 33,
,	a easier	b more easy	© easiest	d most easy
	Fill in gap:	©	<u> </u>	
46)		. 01		THE THE STATE OF T
-	_	k. She cooks		
		ooks than her sister.		
18)	Mr Ahmed is an	amazing teacher.		
19)	After the match, I f	eel exhausted.		•
20)	My father was	angry when I return	ed home late.	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
21)	My work is much b	ad than vours.		
		need to do something r	new as he is boring	
		than open enemies.		[]
	He is the fastest of			[]
		s much so you want.		[]



2 Intermediate Exercises المعاملة

	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:	
1)	I can't stand this pe	erson. He is		
•	(a) boredom	b bored	© boring	d boringly
2)	This man is	. Mr Ali, perhaps taller.		
	as tall as	b so tall so	© as tall so	d so tall as
3)	She has been ill, bu	ut she certainly	today.	
		b looks better		d is best
4)	This pullover is too	big. I want a or	ne.	
	@ most small	b more small	© smaller	d smallest
5)		are nice, but ours are		
	a nicer than	b nicest	© the nicest	d the nicer
6)	What a pity she live	es so far. I wish she live	d	
	nearest	b nearer	© more near	d most near
7)		nice, but that one is		
		b more nice	•	d more nicer
8)		od, but ours is		
	•	b more better	© much best	d much best
9)		Brian's is	_ :	
	•	b more worse		d worst
10)		tshe used to be		
	•	b so fat so		d so fat than
11)		today. She can		
	0	b looks better	c seems best	d looks best
12)		not that one.		O • • • •
	•	b so tall so	© so tall as	d so tall
13)		owd. It was tha		
		b more crowded		d crowder
14)		nes much than t		
		b more whiter	© most white	d whiter
15		ch than this.		
	(a) most careful	b more careful	(c) carefulest	d carefuler
	Fill in gap:			
16	Ahmed looks older	r he is.		
17	Summer is	. than winter.		
18	He got ab	etter than he was yeste	rday.	
		visited Luxor before.		
	Aya is a twenty			
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
21	This work is tired.			ſ
	The two boys are t	the same tall.		[
		asy. I can study it easy.		[
	_	rely angry when I return	ned home late.	[
		early to buy bread.		[

42





	.00-00/4020000		Sent Here and Here a	
	Choose the correct ar	nswer from a, b, c or d		
1)	My father treats us in	way.		
	(a) friend (b)	a friendly	© friendly	d a friend
2)	Kareem's exercises a	re of all, in m	y opinion.	
	(a) better than (b)	the better	© the best	d best
3)	The fat you eat	t, the healthier you be	ecome.	
	(a) less	least	© most	d much
4)	I've never seen such a	a film.		
	(a) funniest (b)	funny	© funnier	d fun
5)	The fat you ea	at, the healthier you b	ecome.	
	(a) less	least	© most	d much
6)	He likes fish			
	(a) a few (b)	the fewest	© most	d the less
7)	Ali is of two br	others.		
	(a) tall (b)	the taller	C the tallest	d taller
8)	I think Ahmed is your	friend.		
	(a) the best (b)	the better	© better	d best
9)	Raise your voice, plea	ase. I can hea	ır you.	
	(a) hardness (b)	hard	© hard	d hardly
10	Toka is intere			•
	(a) few (b)	many	C the most	d most
11	The more you study, t	he marks you	u get.	
	(a) less	good	© better	d best
12	The writer's new book	k is his book.		
	(a) popular (b)	most popular	© most	d more
13	The shirt wasn't the	price as I had	thought at first.	
		5	© most	d more
14	Ali is a fast runner. I c	an't run as fast as		
	_		© he is	d her
15	He to find a jo	b, but he had no luck		
	(a) tried hard (b)	tried hardly	© hardly tried	d hard tried
	Fill in gap:	•		
16	The movie was really	boring. It's the most b	poring movie I've	seen.
	Mona is taller	•		
	No soonersh		ho clont	
			ne siept.	
	Is that size big			
20) Which is, Cai			***************************************
	Find the mistake, the	en correct it:		
21	Going to the club is or	ne of my every day ha	abits.	[
22	The higher you go; the	e least heat there's in	the air.	[
23	The poor needs more	care and interest.		[
	The latest book was A			[
25	The meeting was very	/ good-organised. It v	vas fruitful	[





أدوات المعرفة والنكرة 6) Definite and Indefinite articles

أدوات النكة indifinite articles: A & An

نستخدم a / an = one بمعنى وأحد وتأتى قبل اللسم المفرد النكرة (غير محدد)

- أي نستخدم (a) قبل اللسم المفرد الذي بعد المبدوء بحرف ساكن كتابة ونطق/
- a boy a girl a man a woman a hand a lion a bus a farmer a university - a uniform - a useful..... - a European.....
 - 🗐 نستخدم (an) قبل اللسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف متحرك كتابة ونطق (a, e, i, o, v):
- an orange an egg an insect an apple an hour an umbrella an honest an squash

• نستخدم a / an قَبْلُ الاسم المفرد عند ذكره لأول مرة يكون نكرة أي غير محدد

✓ I read a novel in the library.

نستخدم a / an لنشر إلى الوظائف (

✓ She is an engineer.

√ He works as a teacher.

a / an نستخدم a / an لنشر إلى وأحد من عدد أو إلى النوع

✓ I bought a pen.

√ I ate an apple.

✓ He is an English man.

a / an نستخدم a / an قبل الجنسيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد

✓ She is an Egyptian woman.

✓ Ali is a clever boy.

- و نستخدم a / an قبل الصفات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد
- √ Toka is an intelligent airl.
 - a / an مع تعييرات السرعة والثمن والنسية.

▶ Once a day	eighty kilometers an hour
twice a week	sixty meters a minute
▶ Three times a month	twenty pounds a kilo
▶ four times a year	ten pounds a liter

such / so بعد a / an نستخدم 🕜



اسم يعد مفرد + a - an صفة + اسم يعد مفرد + so صفة عدم مفرد



✓ He is such an honest boy.

√ He is so honest a bov.

ستخدم a / an قبل ادوات التحزئة الفرد

a cup of	فنجان من	a loaf of	رغيف من	a tin of	علبة من
a glass of	كوب من	a bar of	قطعة من	a slice of	شريحة من
a bottle of	زجاجة من	a kilo of	كيلومن	a packet of	لفه من
a jar of	برطمان من	a bag of	كيس من	a sheet of	فرخمن
a pair of	زوج م ن	a dish of	طبق من	a tube of	أنبوبة من

نستخدم a / an بعد What للتعجب



اسم يعد مفرد + صفة + What a - an



✓ What a pretty girl.

✓ What a hard question!



م نستخده a / an (عند الاشارة الي شخص واحد)

She decided to become a Muslim.

- ✓ They are clever students.
- ✓ I saw strong men in the factory.
- ✓ Yesterday, we bought nice furniture.
- ✓ I like to gain information.
- ✓ Honesty is one of his traits.



أداة المع فهة

The definite article: The

🗐 نستخدم (the) قبل اللسواء التي تعد مفرد أو جوع وابضا مع اللسواء التي لا تعـد واللسـماء معنوبـــة للتعربـــف أو للتحديد:

The boy - the boys - the car - the cars - the news - the bread - the money



- نستخدم theعند التعريف بغرض التحديد
- The little girl who is wearing a dress is Toka.
 - نستخدم the عند ذكر الاسم مرة ثانية (يكون في الجملة الاولى نكرة وفي الجملة الثانية معرفة)
- ✓ She gave me g present. The present was nice.
 - نستخده e مع الصفة في الدرجة الثالثة (التفضيل)

the best	the tallest	the biggest	the shortest
the most	the least	the newest	the oldest

و نستخدم the قبل الصفة لتشر إلى الحمع (بأتي بعدهم فعل حمع)

the poor	الفقراء	the young	الصغار	the dead	الموتي
the rich	الاغنياء	the old	كبار السن	the disabled	المعاقين

The poor gre in a bad need to the help of the rich.

- و نستخدم the مع جمل المقارنة: كلما كلما
- The more you study, the higher marks you get.

نستخدم the قبل الصفات التي تدل على الجنسية لتدل على الشعب

the English	الشعب الانجليزي	the Irish	الشعب الايرلندي
the Egyptian	الشعب المصري	the Spanish	الشعب الاسباني

نستخدم the مع الأسماء الفريدة من نهعها

the sun	الشمس	the moon	القمر	the sky	السماء
the world	العالم	the earth	الارض	the sphinx	ابو الهول

معينة the نستخدم the قبل الآلات المستقية بعد أفعال معينة

listen - play - learn - teach

✓ Jana plays the guitar.

✓ He teaches me the drum.



Wise Saying

Avoiding failure is to avoid progress. تجنبك للفشل يعنى أنك تتجنب التقدم



Giants' Gram

- و نستخدم the مع الاكتشافات و الأختراعات (لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح حهاز فلا تأخذ (the)
- ✓ The computer is the most useful invitation.
- ✓ I bought a computer yesterday.

الأشياء بشكل عام:	the للإشارة إلى	٠ نستخدم
-------------------	-----------------	----------

former.				1	• • · · · ·	
- Committee	the city	المدينة	the station	الحطة	the capital	العاصمة
	the club	النادي	the weather	الطقس	the cinema	السينما
			ن والألقاب.	والبنوك والفنادة	و أسماء الهيئات والنظمات	م the منتسن ه

E	the government	الحكومة	the police	الشرطة	the king	الملك
	the press	الصحافة	the ministry	الوزارة	the lord	اثلورد
	the navy	الاسطول	the army	الجيش	the Hilton	هلتون

ش نستخدم the مع أسماء البلاد المركبة والتي تحتوي على

republic - state - union - kingdom

- ✓ the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.
- √ the Republic of China

✓ the United Arab Emirates.

√ the USA

شتخدم the قبل سلاسل الحيال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحاري والجزر والمناطق الجغرافية:

▶ the Red Sea	▶ the Nile	▶ the North Pole
▶ the Mediterranean Sea	▶ the Pacific	▶ the South Pole
▶ the Siwa Oasis	▶ the Alps	▶ the Middle East
▶ Lake Nasser	▶ Cairo University	▶ Mount Everest

للحظ عدم استخدام the مع الدول والقارات والمدن الصغيرة، المدن الكبيرة والبحيرات والخلجان والحبال المفردة وكذلك لا تستخدم مع الشوارع والطرق والمبادين والأحياء

(1) نستخدم the مع التعسرات الزمنية

in the morning	in the evening	in the afternoon		
in the present	in the past	▶ in the future		
▶ at night		🍵 للحظ ان night لا تأخذ the		

نستخدم the مع الاتجاهات وقبل أسماء الصحف والكتب المقدسة

	▶ the north of	شمال	in the east	في شرق
	the south of	جنوب	in the west	في غرب
prosen	▶ the Bible	الانجيل	▶ the times	جريدة التايمز

🛍 نستخدم the قبل الأماكن عند استخدامها لغير غرضها (إذا كان الذهاب للمكان للغرض الاساسي منه لا نضع the)

- ✓ She was sent to prison because of her crimes.

الأعداد الترتبية the مع الأعداد الترتبية

▶ the first	▶ the next	▶ the sixties
> the second	▶ the last	▶ the seventies

Wise Saving

If you want to live a happy life, tie it to a goal, not to people or objects. إن أردت أن تعيش حياة سعيدة ، فاربطها بهدف ، وليس

بأشخاص أو أشباء



لا نستخدام أداة No article

عدم استخدام أي أداة (a - an - the) قبل بعض الأسماء

glass - football - love - English - Summer - plastic

Usage



الا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو العرفة (a - an - the) مع الأسماء الحردة المعنوبة:

beauty	love	freedom	happiness	peace	evil			
◊ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل الأماكن إذا كأن الذهاب للغرض الذي أنشئت من أجله								
school	prison	church	university	mosque	hospital			
				اغرض نضع the:	طُ في حالة اختلاف ا	للحذ		

√ We go to school for learning.

√ He went to the school to ask about his son.

women	men	animals	birds	water	braed	
ير محدد	شطة بوجه عام وغ	لألعاب الرياضية والأن	a - an - th)مع	نكرة أو العرفة <mark>(e</mark>	دم أي من أدواتُ ال	لانستخ
basketball	football	tennis	volleyball	handball	- 10 July 1982	
	غير محدد	لواد الخام بوجه عام و	a - an - th)مع ا	نكرة أو المعرفة (🏿	دم أي من أدوات الـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ	لا نستخ
wood	glass	iron	plastic	wool	silk	
- 1	بوجه عام وغير مح	سماء الطعام والشراب	a - an - th)مع أ	نكرة أو العرفة (e	دم أي من أدوات ال	لا نستخ

√ I like to drink tea.

✓ The teg you bought was very tasty.

◊ لا نستخدم أى من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع المواد الدراسية

science	history	English	Arabic	art	chemistry
2		أسماء اللغات	a - an - tt)مح	رة أو المعرفة (ne	ا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكر

Arabic Spanish Japanese English Germen French € لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع الوجبات بوجه عام وغير معدد

lunch dinner breakfast supper

🎒 للحظ في حالة التحديد نضع the:

MA

✓ I always have dinner with my parents.

✓ I invited my friend to the dinner.

و لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)قبل الأيام والشهور وفصول السنة

Spring	Winter	Autumn	Summer	May	Sunday	
5	، والمدن والأسماء العلم:	نبل اسماء القارات الدول	a(a - an - the	، النكرة أو المعرفة (؛	ً نستخدم أي من أدوات	3 0

Egypt King Farouk **Africa** Cairo Ahmed

☼ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع وسائل المواصلات في حالة وجود حرف الجر by .

✓ He always goes to school by taxi.

🗐 للحظ في حالة استخدام حرف الجر in - on نضع بعدهم عدالة استخدام حرف الجر

✓ He always goes to school on a taxi.







	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	England and France	e are Europeai	n countries.	
_	a	b the	© an	d no article
2	England is E	uropean country.		
4	a	b an	© no word	d the
3	has made the	ne world a smaller pla	ce.	
_	(a) A plane	b Planes	© The plane	d This plane
4	I had excitin	g day at work last wee	ek	
4	(a) an	b a	© no article	d the
E		a ruler, but per	n did not work.	- 200.00
_	a	b an		d no article
6	lunch we ha	nd together was delici	<u>—</u>	
4	(a) The	b a	© no article	d an
V	teachers in	my school are kind ar		
6	@ The	6 An	© A	d No article
Ö	novel I read	last week was fun.	0 =1	
6	@ An	b no article	© The	d A
	He got a job as			
4	a no article	(b) an	© the	d a
	Nada travelled to	_		
			© the	d no article
ų,	The Scottish and	English have a his		
	(a) the		© an	d no article
		girl didn't kno	_	
	⊚ ɑ She hasItalia		© an	d no article
		b an	(a) the	
		there is link b	etween pollution and	d no article
	a ocientists tillik tilat a an		© the	d no article
	Cairo iscapi			W no difficie
	a no article		© an	d the
	Fill in gap:			
90		Aire a Ala ad Ala contacta da accordante	H D	
		time that tourists have	e seen the Pyramids.	
	Would you like			
-		piano is new a		
		8-year old boy		
2(I read a book,	book that I read is v	ery nice.	
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:		
2	He got a job as the			[
20	I met the old man on	my way home. The ol	d man was strange.	į
20	An exams are alway	s very stressful for us	S.	[
20	My sister enjoys pla	ying a guitar.		[
20	A school holidays a	re starting soon.		[

48



Mark قيم نفسك Intermediate Exercises

Mark duudi pud 245

1				
	Choose the correct ans	swer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	It's United Nation	ns vehicle. There	are different ones.	**************************************
_	(a) the	a	© no article	d an
2	He got his degree from	university	in Finland.	
4	(a) (a)	an	© the	d no article
ड	(a) a (b) (b) (l'd like to buy a new flat,	but flats a	are so expensive.	
	(a) (b) (an	© the	d no article
4	Mr. Hany goes to	. school on foot. F	le is an active teache	r.
	(a) an (b) 1	the	(C) (g)	d no article
9	My uncle arrived on	Sunday after r	my birthday.	
4	(a) an (b) t	the	© a	d no article
	You must nover look at	01110		
	(a) (a) (b) t	he	© an	d no article
V	My parents always give i	meuseful	advice before travelli	ng for long hours.
	(a) number of (b) (n		(d) no auticle
Ö	youth play impor	tant roles in the p	progress of all nations	•
	(b) I	he	(c) A	$(d) \Delta n$
e	Mohammed Salah is one	of best fo	otballer in the world.	
44	(a) no word (b) o	3	© the	(d) an
UU	They built house	e near the farm as	they like the view of	olants.
	(a) (a) (b) (a)	ın	© the	d no article
UC	I think the Nile is the long	gest river in the w	orld. Are there	rivers longer than it?
		in .	(c) the	d no article
U	are always very	stressful for most	t students.	
1	(a) An exams (b) E	xams	© A exams	d The exams
TE	wonderful picture	e!		
	© What	Vhạt a	© How	d How a
U	He asked the librarian to	lend himl	booklet in front of her	•
	(a) the (b) a		© an	d some
Ue	Students at schools mus			
these.	a b a	n	© the	d no article
	Fill in gap:			2.3
16	There is good boo	ok in the library.		·
17	I live in Arab Rep	oublic of Eavot.		
18	Who invented bid	cycle?		
	Ahmed's father is			
	I'm reading intere			
-4				***************************************
34	Find the mistake, then c			
	I want the cup of coffee w	vith little sugar.		[]
14	At night, we can see a mo	oon in the sky.		[]
12	I live in an Egypt.			[]
14	I like diving in a Red Sea.	•		ſ1



Q What time is an Maths lesson this afternoon?

3 Advanced Exercises

Mark ئىم نفسك

25

		ord:	
	rect answer from a, b, c	, or u	
	niversal weakness.	O Mr. a	
an an	b no article	© the	d a
Mr Hassan is	better of the two to	eachers.	
@ a	b an	© the	d no article
My father always	s tells mevalual	ble advice.	
a	b an	© the	d no article
4 supper	I had with the America	n delegation is untorg	ettable.
@ An	(b) A	© The	d No Article
€ Egypt has	unique location in th	e world.	
(a) the	(b) a	© an	d no Article
6 Sara sent me	SMS just now.		
a	b an	© the	d no article
My sister has a f	flat on 2 nd floor	•	
a	b an	© the	d no article
€ Ispent1	three-week holiday in S	Sharm.	
(a) a	(b) an	© the	d no article
Yesterday, my f	ather bought me	. useful story. It had us	seful pieces of advice.
a an	(b) a	© the	d no article
	s essential for all peopl	e.	
(a) A	(b) An	© The	d No article
11 like to go to the	e countryside and enjo	y beauty of Na	ture.
(a) a	(b) the	© an	d no article
12 Someone who's	brokenleg fin	ids it difficult to walk.	
(a) (a)	(b) an	© the	d no article
16 Ava studies fou	r hours a day. "a" in th	is sentence means	•••••
@ per	(b) more than one		d less than one
	new friend recently		
(a) the	(b) a	(c) an	d no article
16 I have got	•	· ·	
(a) a	(b) an	© the	d no article
Fill in gap:	s for eight hours	day.	
ud It's not safe to	live in an old he	ouse.	id loave early vesterday
(16) I went to	school to talk to the n	eadmaster to let my k	id leave early yesterday.
	host says that		at school.
40 window	w of the flat was broke	n.	
Find the mist	ake, then correct it:		
21 A subject which	h I like most is English.		[
	nework before I went o		[
	most polluted cities in		[
	re 15 pounds the kilo.		[



Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. [.....

CIANTS

حروف الجر Prepositions حروف الجر

حروف جر غير مستقلة

هي حروف مرتبطة بكلمة معينة سواء كانت اسم / صفة / حال / ضمير

هي حروف لها معني لات تبط بكلمة معننة



about	عن	down	إلى أسفل	across	٦٠٠	near	قريب
above	فوق	except	ما عدا	after	بعد	over	فوق
in	في	for	لأجل	before	أمام / قبل	past	عبر / بعد / وراء
at	عند	from	من	among	وسط	round	حول
on	على	out	خارج	without	بدون / بلا	since	مند
to	إلى	in spite of	بالرغممن	between	بين	through	خلال
with	مع	into	إلى الداخل	against	ضد	till	حتى
by	بواسطة	of	من	beyond	مابعد	up	إلى فوق
behind	خلف	off	بعيدا عن	inside	في الداخل	towards	باتجاه
below	تحت	opposite	مقابل / أمام	outside	في الخارج		أدنى
like	مثل	until	لغاية	beside	بجانب		
Professional Company of the Profession of the Pr	annouserererererere	AND DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPERT		Lawrence and the same of the s	*************************	***********************	******************************

حروف الجر المستقلة

حروف جرالزمان

in	ع فترات اليوم / الشهور / المواسم/ السنين	0	in the morning/ in the evening / in the afternoon
7.1	القرن / أوقات معينة	/ >	in April / in 2019 / in the winter / in the 8 Th
			century.
			in the past / in the beginning
on	ع الأيام/ التاريخ الكامل	•	on Sunday / on December, 25th 1985
at	ع الساعة وبعض الفترات الخاصة	•	at six o'clock / at noon / at midday / at midnight
			at night/ at the end of
after / befo	عد / قبل	۱ 🕨	after the meeting / before six o'clock
during			during the lesson
between / f	ين /من إلي إلى ألمن	1	between four and six / from 2015 to 2020

🗐 للحظ الاختلاف بين:

on time

in time في الوقت المحدد بالضبط

قبل الوقت

✓ It's better to come in time.

✓ Don't worry; the train will arrive on time.



"Optimism is the one quality more associated with success and happiness than any other." التفاؤل هو الميزة الأكثر ارتباطا بالنجاح والسعادة من أي شيء آخر



حروف جرالكان B

	or suprement	
مع القارات / الدول / المدن / داخل الأماكن in	•	in Africa / in France / in Luxor / in the school / in
		a boat / in the flat
on / above	•	on the desk / on the roof / on the island
at الكان الصغير والتجمعات	•	at the bus stop / at the back / at the wedding
under / below / beneath	•	under the table / below the signature
بين (مكانين أو أكثر) between / among	•	between the table and the chair / among people
in front of / behind أمام / خلف	•	in front of the door / behind the wall
next to / near / beside / by	•	next to the club / near the house / beside the
بجوار / بجانب	-	door / by the river
up / down أعلي / أسفل	•	up that ladder / down the road
along / opposite بطول / مقابل	•	along the beach / opposite the cinema

حروف جرالوسيلة

by	مع الأشخاص والوسائل	Þ	by car / by bus / by taxi / by air / by Nada
in '	مع وسائل الموصلات	•	in a car / in a taxi
on	مع وسائل الموصلات	•	on a bus / on the ship / on my bike / on foot
with	مع الآلات والوسائل وأجزاء الجسم	•	with a hammer / with your hand
in	مع اللغات	•	in French / in Arabic / in English

🧻 للحظ اختلاف حروف الجر مع الوسائل:

by - in - on

تستخدم by مع وسائل المواصلات إذا لم يسبقها أداة (by مع وسائل المواصلات إذا لم

✓ I go to school by bus (by car).

تستخدم in ونستخدم on ونستخدم on مع بـاقي وسـائل المواصــلات إذا سـبقتها أداة (car / the مــــفة) مـــفة (مـــكـــة):

√ I go to school in a bus.

√ I go to school in the car.

حــروف الجـر الغير المستقلـة

حروف الجر بعد الأسماء والأفعال والصفات Grammar

Perpositions after nouns, verbs and adjectives

The second second	Preposit	ions after nouns	عد الأسماء	حروف الجر بـ	
cause of	سببد	increase in	زیادة فی	a solution to	حل ا
reason for	سبب ا	decrease in	نقص في	an obstacle to	عائق لـ
the popularity of	شعبية الـ	the matter with	الخطأ في	damage to	تلف في
the problem of	مشكلة الـ	wrong with	الخطأ في	an answer to	حل 1
the aim of	هدف الـ	apology for	اعتذارعن	a reply to	رد علی
a supply of	مؤن / إمداد	an effect on	تأثير على	advantage to	ميزة ك



ACCESS TO THE PARTY OF THE	Preposit	ions after adjecti	عد الصفات ves	حروف الجر ب	
brilliant at	رائع في	annoyed with	متضايق من (شخص	responsible for	مسئول عن
bad at	سيءِ في	furious with	غاضب بشدة من	famous for	مشهورب
terrible at	سيءِ / فظيع في	bored with	يشعر بالملل من	good for	مفید ل
wonderful at	رائع في	familiar with	مألوف لـ	ready for	مستعد ئـ
good at	ماهر في	angry with	غاضب من (شخص)	qualified for	مؤهل اـ
clever at	ماهر في	disappointed wit	خاب أمله H	bad for	ضارك
hopeless at	ميئوس منه	pleased with	مسرور من	sorry about / for	آسف بشأن
proud of	فخورب	delighted with	مسرور من	mad about	مهووس بـ
frightened of	خائف من	crowded with	مزدحم ب	sad about	حزين بشأن
full of	مليءِ ب	satisfied with	راضي عن	excited about	مثارمن
scared of	خائف من	dependent on	معتمد علي	worried about	قلق بشأن
terrified of	مرتعب من	keen on	مهتم ب	happy about	سعيد ب
ashamed of	خجلان من	rich in	غنيب	crazy about	مهووس ب
afraid of	خائفمن	interested in	مهتم ب	curious about	فضولي بشأن
fond of	مغرم ب	involved in	متورط في	enthusiastic about	متحمس ك
full of	ممتلئب	kind to (good to)	عطوف مع (well-known to / for	مشهور ب

💼 في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات نستخدم .to + inf:

happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky / relieved / amazed

✓ It is difficult for her to get up early.

عروف الجر بعد الأفعال Prepositions after verbs						
					• • • • •	
find out about		search for		complain to	يشكو نشخص	
wonder about		apologise for	يعتذر عن شيء	belong to	يخص	
tell about	يخبر شخص عن	hope for	يأمل في	apply to	يتقدم بطلب لشخص	
think about / of	يفكر في	blame for	يلوم علي	object to	يعترض علي	
dream about / of	يحلمب	apply for (a job)	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	intend to	ينوي	
hear about / of	يسمع عن	work for	يعمل لدي	apologise to	يعتذر لشخص	
complain about	يشكو من	hear from	يتلقي أخبارا من	get to	يصل إلى	
know about	يعرف عن	protect from	يحمي من	consist of	يتكون من	
talk about	يتحدث عن	suffer from	يعاني من	die of	يموت بسبب	
read about	يقرأ عن	result from	ينتج من	accuse of	يتهم ب	
warn <mark>about</mark>	يحذرمن	prevent from	يمنع من	deal with	يتعامل مع	
result in	يؤدي إلى	differ from	يختلف عن	rely on	يعتمد علي	
succeed in	ينجح في	crash into	يصطدم ب	depend on	يعتمد علي	
believe in	يؤمن بـ	cut down	يقطع (الأشجار)	concentrate on	يركز علي	
laugh at	يسخر من	take off ملابسه	تقلع للطائرة / يخلع	go on	يستمر	
help in / with	يساعد في	take place in	يحدث	look on	يتصفح الانترنت	
go <mark>up</mark>	يصعد	take part in	يشارك	clear <mark>up</mark>	يوضح / يحل اللغز	

ito + inf. الأفعال الأثية يأتي بعدها

agree	يوافق	threaten	يهدد	promise	يعطي وعد	hope - wish	يأمل
arrange	يرتب	decide	يقرر	refuse	يرفض	fail	يفشل
decide	يقرر	learn	يتعلم	want	يريد	manage	يتمكن
expect	يتوقع	plan	يخطط	offer	يعرض	prepare	يجهز

[✓] Toka hopes to be an engineer.

[√] Jana promised to study hard.





help

turn

give

trade

hear

angry

find

blame

run

trade in

Giants' Grammar

حاول أن تفهم وتميز ما يلي جيداً ولاحظ الفرق

		Amin ka	
k	position		



help... with + n

يشغل turn on	Þ	Turn on the TV. I want to watch the news
	1	

▶ Always turn off devices after use. turn off It is so cold, turn down the air -

يقلل / يخفض turn down conditioning, but don't turn it off. ا پرفغ / يعلى It is so hot, turn up the air-conditioning. turn up

I asked him to go with me but he turned down. turn down

The food and drink are given out to the poor. give out

give off The fire gave off a lot of heat. پنتچ / يطلق

Never give up, whatever hardships you ستسلم / بقلع عن give up

The children gave away their toys for a يتبرع give away charity.

trade with

We trade in / deal in vegetables.

hear of / about Have you ever heard of this writer?

My friend traveled abroad and I haven't يتلقى أخياراً من hear from heard from him till now.

I am angry with my friend. angry with

۱ am **angry about** what he has done. angry about

I found out that I was mistaken. found out

If you want to find out about this writer, يعرف بشأن find out about search Google.

▶ He blamed me for coming late. blame... for

▶ He blamed his bad result on his bad لقي باللوم على blame....on friend.

ينفذ / ينتهى run out (بدون مفعول) ▶ One day oil will run out.

ینفذ رینتهی We will run out of oil. تعتاج مفعول run out of





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1	The letter I wrote wa	as full mista	kes.	
	(a) in	b of	© off	d with
2	I don't want to go ou	ıt yet. I'm waiting	the mail to	arrive.
	(a) at	b to	© of	d for
3	Ali is looking	. a space to park his	s car.	
	(a) for		© forward	d after
4	He helped th		ture.	
	(a) at	_	© of	d to
6	Is Toka happy	getting the full m	ark in English?	
	(a) for		© about	d in
6	Have his books beer	n popular re	eaders?	
	(a) for	b with	© of	d by
7	He was so bad			
	(a) for		© to	d on
8	What's the main rea	son the pop	oularity of his bo	
	(a) for	b with	© of	d in
9	Mona loves tennis b	ut she is not very	on netball	•
	@ keep	b interested	© keen	d lazy
10	She is most famous.	Egypt.		
	(a) in	b with	© at	d for
11	I'm angry m	y friend because h	ie broke his pro	mise.
	@ to	b from	© at	d with
12	When I realized I wa	is wrong. I apologis	sed him	for my mistake.
	(a) to	b with	© at	d for
13	A balanced diet is g	joodhealth		
	@ for	b in	© at	d abou
14	I'm sorry for			
. .	@ by		© to	d for
16	How did she find	_	-	
	@ about	b out	© from	@ of
	Fill in gap:			
16	All Egyptians are ve	ery proudth	nis massive engi	neering project
	Are you excited			
	Could you help me			ns?
	Samira is very inter			
				o be a doctor.
WU.	The explorers were		amonus.	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
	Do you agree on vis			[.
	His uncle died from			[.
	There has been an i		lately.	[.
24	I must apologize of	disturbing you.		[.



Q Do you know the cause for his weakness?



DOM: NO.									
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:						
1	I can't go to t	he fifth floor today. I'	m exhausted.						
			© up	(d) at					
2		causes damage to t							
	(a) in	(b) of	© away	d down					
3	What do you think is	the best solution							
	(a) of		© to	(d) in					
4	When I speak Italian	, all the others in the							
	(a) with		© at	d to					
6	My father works	an international o	oil company.						
	against against		© to	d for					
6	Mai is always very ki	nd animals.							
	(a) to	(b) at	© with	d of					
7	I felt quite excited as	the plane took	from the airport.						
	@ up		© off	d at					
8	Some people believe	e ghosts.							
			© with	d about					
9	I'd never heard	ⓑ in him at all until last	week.						
	(a) from		© of	d for					
10	This is a difficult peri	iod but it won't go							
	@ on	_	© up	d down					
10	Nobody knows the re	eal reason for the film	n's popularity	children.					
		b to	© for	d of					
12	In 1918, millions of p	eople all over the wo	rld died Span	ish flu.					
	(a) of	b for	© at	d with					
13	He was arrested trac	ding drugs.							
	@ on	b in	© with	d of					
14	You should apologis	e to your teacher	forgetting your	homework.					
	(a) for			d at					
16	Did Aya apply	that job in the com	npany?						
	@ on	(b) at	© for	d in					
	Fill in gap:								
		him for losing my b							
17	What's the reason	your low grad	les in Maths?						
		pelongs my ur							
		crease the n		ting Egypt this year					
	My little brother is te			ung Egypt uns year.					
GG									
	Find the mistake, t								
21	She managed of wor	k out the problem in I	no time.	[]					
		l an answer of this co		[]					
		ng the match and turn		[]					
24	Oon't go way. The match will start in ten minutes.								



[.....]

66 He usually left us without say a word.



	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:					
1	They lived 2	2 Baker Street.						
	at at		© on	d with				
2	He is with his	s new car.						
	@ proud	b angry	© terrified	d pleased				
3	Let's look th	e internet to find out	more information abo	out this writer.				
_	(a) for	(b) in	© on	d from				
4		hone number. I have	en't heard hin	n for ages.				
	© of	b for	© at	d from				
E	I prefer tea							
•	(a) than	_	© against	d over				
O		sing mobiles while dri						
6	(d) object	b refuse	© disapprove	d hate				
V	You don't object	late tonight, do y	/ou?					
6	(d) worked	b to work the mystery of	© working	d to working				
Q	ne detective will	the mystery of	who was responsible	for the crime.				
0	The popularity	(b) clear up Mohammed Salah	© make up	d give up				
¥	(a) with	Wonammed Salan	nas increased recen					
10	The careless studen	b from nt blamed his failure	bio modelo m	d to				
44	(a) with			d about				
11	My uncle died			(d) about				
	(a) in		© at	d by				
12	We could run out	oil in the next tv						
		b from	© with	(d) in				
13		d from you so						
		b to hearing		d with hearing				
14	He promised							
		b to studying	© studying	d study				
15		wn the happi						
	@ for	b as	© to	d like				
	Fill in gap:							
16	I succeeded	sending that e-mail a	at six o'clock p.m.	·				
		rescuing the imp						
				at we can easily treat.				
				active can caony a cae.				
	O you think life today is different life in the past?							
44	₹ I was disappointed him for being lazy.							
64	Find the mistake, th			<u></u>				
66	Do not are also a few the	he lights of when you	leave.	[]				
		hat dog. It is not frien		[]				
46	He walked for a long time till he finally got at his destination.							



ألانة أنواع هي عبارة عن مجموعة من الكلمات لها معنى تام وتحتوى على فعل محدد بفاعل وتنقسم إلى ثلاثة أنواع هي

A simple sentence	الجملة البسيطة	هي جملة تحتوي علي فعل واحد فقط وله معني واحد تام
		▶ He eats fish. ▶ She did her homework.
9 A compound sentence	الجملة المركبة	هي جملة تحتوي علي أكثر فعل. تتكون من جملتين بسيطتين مربوطتين
APPEREZ JOS		بحرفِ عطف وله معنيان كاملان تامان.
		▶ He ate fish and drank juice.
		▶ Both Ali and Ahmed are clever.
8 A complex sentence	الجملة العقدة	تتكون من جملتين بسيطتين أو أكثر، مربوطة بأداة ربط مناسبة، وتحتوي
		على فعلين محدودين وتعطي معنى واحد فقط.
		If you succeed, I'll buy you a car.
		▶ He didn't go to school because he was ill.



Lions eat meat.

▶ Ali plays tennis.



▶ He is tall.	▶ She stud	dies hard.	They have a house.	ضمير فاعل
It isn't my car. Mir	e is red.	My bag	is big but hers is small.	ضمير ملكية
Someone robbed	this bank.	▶ Everyboo	dy seeks to make money.	ضمير غير محدد
This is a book.	▶ These a	re my son.	That was a bus.	ضمير إشارة
The poor live a mis	serable life.	▶ The disc	bled need care.	صفة
My father is a tead	cher.	Our hou	se is very big.	صفة ملكية + اسم
This car is very old	d	▶ That bui	Iding is huge.	صفة إشارة + اسم
There is a boy con	ning. Th	ere were pe	eople crying yesterday.	There
The owner of the b				عبارة اسمية

الفعال Verb

- الفعل عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم للتعبير عن حركة أو حالة أو حدث ويأتي بعد الفاعل ويمكن من خلاله تحديد زمن الجملة:
- ✓ He works hard.
 ✓ I will take you with me.
 ✓ I am eating pasta now.
 الاحظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل من حيث المفرد والدمع
 - (are were have infinitive) و اذا کان الفاعل جمع یأتی بعدہ فعل جمع
 - (is was has v+s) اذا کان الفاعل جمع یأتی بعدہ فعل مفرد



تكملة الجملة Complement

تكملة الجملة وتأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل (و لا يشترط وجود تكمله قد يكون فعل لازم) قد تكون

▶ I saw Ali.	▶ He is o	doctor.	اسم
I fixed the table.	▶ She be	ought a dog.	nationalisa
▶ I met her.	Aya called us.	▶ We will invite them.	ضمير مفعول
I saw someone near	our flat. I didn'	t find anyone in the club.	ضمير غير محدد
We should help the	poor. They a	are clever.	صفة
I traveled yesterday	. He came eq	rly.	ظرف زمان
I lived here last yea		quiet city. I was born there.	ظرف مكان
They ran quickly.	> She spoke le	oudly.	ظرف كيفية
I saw my friends.	We sold our car.	Ali met his relatives.	صفة ملكية + اسم



I like this colour.

I met that person before.

صفة إشارة + اسم



الجملة الأمرية

هي جملة تبدأ بفعل أساسي في المصدر في حالة الإثبات Pon't - Never وبعدهما المصدر في حالة النفي ⑤
✓ Open the door. ✓ Don't waste your time. ✓ Never come late again.

(G) Exclamation

هي حولة لا ترتبط يتكوين وعين أو ثابت وهدفها التعبير عن التعجب

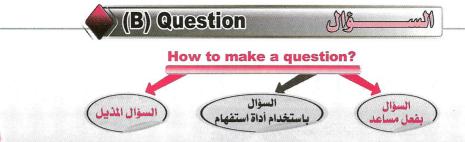
✓ How kind of you!

✓ Oh! What a lie!

✓ How wonderful it is!

√ What a fool he is!

✓ What lovely eyes she has! ✓ How silly they are!



السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد أو ناقص A question with Yes / No & answer

💼 هو السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد وتكون إجابته بـــ Yes or No أو ما يساويهما

الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة	المضارع	الماضي	بعدهم	
V L-	am - is	was	\/_ inc	
V. be	are	were	V+ ing	
V. have	have - has	had	P.P	
V. do	do - does	did	100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100 100	
	will	would		
	shall	should	The second secon	
	can	could	Inf.	
Modal verbs	may	might		
	must	had to		
	have to - has to	had to	The second secon	

كيفية عمل السؤال باستخدام الأفعال الساعدة

إذا كان في الجملة أي من اللفعال المساعدة السابقة يتم تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل "طريقة المقص".

🗐 إذا لم يوجد بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم ما يلي:

do	go / visit	إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات) مع الفاعل الجمع
does	goes/ visits	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (s / es/ ies) مع الفاعل المفرد
did	went / visited	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (d /ed/ ied) أو فعل ماضى غير منتظم

🗐 يتم حذف الــــ Yes, من الجملة ومع ,No يتم حذف الـ nt.أما إذا وجد No بعدها جملة مثبتة يتم عكس السؤال.



Test yourself

Change the following sentences into questions

1	Yes, they are playing tennis.
2	Yes, he is a teacher.
•	Yes, they've got their books.
4	No, she hasn't got her doll.
6	No, he wasn't at Cairo yesterday.
6	Of course, Eman is studying Maths now.
7	No, I'm not listening to music.
8	Sorry, he wasn't at school.
9	Sure, it is my favourite toy.
10	Yes, I'm ten years old.
11	Certainly, this is my pencil.
12	Yes, we <u>have</u> Maths every day.
13	Yes, they always go to Alex.
14	Yes, Ali and Ahmed meet once a week.
15	Yes, Mona collect <u>s</u> stamps.
16	Yes, she <u>has</u> a car.
10	Sure, he <u>saw</u> me buying the books.
16	No, I manag <u>ed</u> to solve it.
16	Yes, Jana do <u>es</u> her homework every evening.
20	Yes, they <u>had</u> eggs and toast for breakfast in the morning.
20	Yes, Aya <u>went</u> to the cinema.
	No, I <u>didn't</u> have meat and rice for lunch.
	No, he <u>never</u> won a prize.
200 X	<u> </u>

GIANTS

Giants' Grammar

2

الســـؤال المذيـــل Question Tag

- السؤال المذيل عبارة عن سؤال قصير يضاف في نهاية الجملة الخبرية لزيادة التأكيد ومعناه "أليس كذلك" أو "هل أنا على صواب".
 - 🗐 يتكون السوُّالِ المذيل من فعل مساعد وضمير فاعل طبقاً لفاعل الجملة.
 - 🗐 إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفياً والعكس.
- يكون دائماً الجزء الثاني ضمير فاعل ولا يمكننا استخدام الأسماء. إذا جاء اسم مذكر عاقل يحول (he) إذا جاء اسم مؤنث عاقل يحول (she) واسم غير عاقل مفرد (it) والجمع عاقل أو غير عاقل إلى (they).
 - 🗐 للحظ عدم تحويل (I) إلى (you) والعكس في السؤال المذيل.



ضمیر فاعل +فعل مساعد منفي ,..... فعل مثبت + فاعل
 ضمیر فاعل +فعل مساعد مثبت ,..... فعل منفی + فاعل



- ✓ Jana is a clever girl, isn't she?
- ✓ Dalia has typed the letters, hasn't she?
- ✓ Ali won't be late, will he? ✓ I shall visit you, shan't !?
 - 🥫 في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد نستخدم (do / does / did) حسب زمن فعل الجملة.
- √ They came by car, didn't they?
- √ Toka speaks English well, doesn't she?
- ✓ People like making money, don't they?
 - (NO المنفية على السؤال (أولوية الإجابة للجملة المثبتة Yes والجملة المنفية 🗐

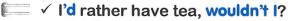
Mona is sick, isn't she?

- Yes, she is.
- No, she isn't.

The boys never liked dancing, did they?

- ▶ Yes, they did.
- No, they didn't.
- أَ الكلمـاتُ الأتيـة few / little / never / seldom / hardly / rarely / no longer / neither تعبـر عـن ألفى ولذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً .
- ✓ I will never speak to her again, will !?
- √ They rarely visit Japan, do they?

🧻 للحظ الاختصارات الأتية:



- √ We'd like to eat fish, wouldn't we?
- √ You'd better stay in bed, hadn't you?
- √ It's stopped raining, hasn't it?
- ✓ It's running fast, isn't it?





- anyone / someone /somebody / everyone /everybody / no one nobody) إذا كان الفاعـل [] إذا كان الفاعـل (they) في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
- Everybody has finished the test, haven't they?
 - ✓ No one is here, are they?
 - إذا كان الفاعل (something / nothing / anything / everything) نستخدم (it) في السؤال المذيل مع إذا كان الفاعل (something / nothing / anything / everything) في السؤال المذيل مع
 - √ Something stops me, doesn't it?
- √ Nothing can change the fact, can it?





1- لاحظ استخدام (had / has / have) في السؤال المذيل

- [] إذا كان (has / have / had) فعل مساعد فتستخدم هذه الأفعال في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ I haven't finished my homework yet, have !?
- ✓ Mona has never studied her lessons, has she?
- ✓ The children had been to their school, hadn't they?
 (has / have / had) كفعل أساسي بمعني يملك يمكن استخدام (has / have / had) فعل أساسي بمعني يملك يمكن استخدام (do / does / did) ولكن يفضل (do / does / did) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ I have a camera, don't I (haven't I)? ✓ He has a camera, doesn't he (hasn't he)?
- √ He had a camera, didn't he (hadn't he)?
 - إذا كان فعل الجملة (had / has / have) كفعل أساسي بمعني آخر غير يملك نستخدم فقط (do / does / did) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ I have a letter from my uncle, don't !?

Characters

- ✓ Ahmed has a cup of tea, doesn't he? ✓ Toka had lunch at home, didn't she?
 Ahmed has a cup of tea, doesn't he? ✓ Toka had lunch at home, didn't she?
 (do / does / did) نستخدم فقط (has to / have to / had to) في السؤال المذيل مع
 وراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
 - ✓ I have to leave now, don't !? ✓ Aya has to work hard, doesn't she?
 - √ Lions had to be kept in cages, didn't they?

2- لاحظ تكوين السؤال المذيل في حالة وجود جملتين

- اذا احتوت الجملة الأساسية علي فعل مــن أفعــال الــرأي مثــل (......) I think/I believe/I hope/I expect المديل علي الجملة الثانية ولكن مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولي تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ I believe it's going to rain, isn't it?
- ✓ I don't think Ali will win the match, will he?
- ✓ I expect Mai never tells lies, does she?
- أداة وجود أداة ربط (if after when...) فإن السؤال المـذيل يتبـع الجملـة التـى لا تحتــوى علـى أداة الربط. مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولي لا تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفى:
- √ When he came home late, my dad wasn't happy, was he?
- ✓ I'll help you if you ask, won't !?

Test yourself

University (1) He isn't friendly,?	14) You'd better have fruits,?
supply state	2) Ali's gone home?	15) I had a serious disease,?
SERVICE STATES	3) This water's hot,?	16) Lions like eating meat,?
Amendation		17) Nada set the table,?
enventues en	i) Tod bala goodleys, iii	18) You haven't met Aya,?
Section of the Persons	o) Everyone carriner,	19) Jana didn't arrive yesterday,?
PONDADAD	0) (4)	20) Toka never read this novel,?
Academy.		
(properties)	8) He has a new car,?	21) No one could recongise him,?
September 5	9) They won't go with us,?	22) Nothing can be achieved,?
- service de la constante de l	10) This shop's very expensive,?	The second secon
and constitutions	11) Few people saw the criminal,?	
mer sterment		25) A few people arrived,?
-	12) I don't think Jana will pass,?	
	13) We had to stay at a hotel?	26) Little money was lost,?



1	You'll come with us	s,?		
	@ will you	b you will	© won't you	d don't you
2	You go to London e	every day, you?		C / 55
	@ don't	b won't	© can't	d arent
3	She doesn't live he	re, she?		
A	@ doesn't		© does	d did
4		visit us, he?		
a	(a) do	b will	© won't	d don't
Q	You aren't very tall		_ :	
a	@ aren't		© do	d have
U	There's a lot of coff			
a	@ aren't		© hasn't	d doesn't
Y	You'd like to go,			
8	@ didn't They won't come ye		© would	d won't
4	@ won't	(b) will		A
Ø	Jenny's in Italy,		© would	d do
	@ doesn't	(h) isn't	© aren't	d hasn't
10		died her lessons,	she?	u ilasii i
	@ does	b has	© hasn't	d doesn't
00	You wanted to go, .			G doesiii
		(b) did	© aren't	d didn't
12	They've got a dog,			
	a haven't		© do	d will
18	You come here ofte	en,you?		,
	@ come	b do	© don't	d haven't
14		orrow, they?		
44	@ won't		© will	d don't
UE	Alison, you'd like to	go on this trip,		
44	@ didnt		© wouldn't	d won't
UO	Martha's in the U.S.			
96	@ doesn't	(b) isn't	© aren't	d hasn't
VV	(a) them	e the fact, can?		
10		b nothing	© they	d it
44		people, there? (b) weren't	(A) arranda	(A) In moral to
10	•	ondon before,y	© aren't	d hasn't
44	(a) don't	b have	© haven't	d aren't
20	It's very crowded in		Cildvelli	d dreiii
	(a) isn't there		© is there	d is it
21	He drank milk,			W 13 11
		b isn't it	© didn't he	d doesn't he
22	•	S.A. last year,?		a docsilline
			© didn't she	d weren't she
23	He eats meat every		3	
	@ doesn't it		© isn't it	d isn't he
24		hed the test, haven't		
	(a) she	b he	© it	d they
				*



السؤال بأداة أستفهام Wh Question

هو السؤال الذي يستخدم فيه أداة استفهام للسؤال عن شيء محدد وتختلف الإجابة باختلاف أدوات الاستفهام:

- ▼ تحديد وحدف الإجابة المطلوب السؤال عنها (مثل when يتم حدف (حرف الجر + الزمن).
- ◆ حدد الفعل المساعد بالجملة وان لم تحتوي علي فعل مساعد نأتى بـ do / does / did.
 - و حدد الضمائر التي يتم تحويلها مثل we إلى you.
 - 3 في حالة استخدام who للسؤال عن الفاعل نحذف الفاعل وتبقى الجملة كما هي.
- أما إذا استخدمت who للسؤال عن مفعول نطبق صيغ السؤال بتقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل.



الإستثمام

	🗐 تقسم أدوات الاستفهام إلي:							
	أدوات استفهام أساسية							
N	أداة الاستفهام	المعنى		متى نستخدمها ؟				
1	What	ما/ماذا؟		تسأل عن: المفعول / الفعل / الحدث				
2	Who	من ؟		تسأل عن: الفاعل (شخص)				
3	Which	اي ؟		تسأل عن: الشيء الغير عاقل				
4	Where	این ؟		تسأل عن: المكّان				
5	When	متى ؟		تسأل عن: الزمان				
6	Why	3 17T	becau	تسأل عن: السبب والإجابة se - to - for				
7	How	ڪيف ۽		تسأل عن: الحال أو الطريقة أو الوسيلة				
8	Whose	ملك من ؟		تسأل عن: الملكية				
		رعية	أدوات استفهام ف					
9	What colour	ما لون؟	<u>(W</u>	تسأل عن: اللون (للتخيير hich colour				
10	What time	في أي وقت؟	عن: الوقت المحدد					
11	What size	ما مقاس؟	ل عن: المقاس					
12	How old = (What ag	je)	كم العمر ؟	تسأل عن: السن أو العمر				
13	How high = (What he	eight)	كم ارتفاع ؟	تسأل عن: الارتفاع				
14	How many		کم عدد؟	تسأل عن: العدد				
15	How tall = (What he	eight)	ما طول؟	تسأل عن: الطول / شجر / أبراج / إنسان				
16	How much = (What pr	ice)	ما كمية / كم ثمن؟	تسأل عن: الكمية أو الثمن				
17	How often = (How ma	iny times)	ڪم مرة؟	تسأل عن: عدد مرات عمل الشيء				
18	How long = (What le		ما المدة؟	تسأل عن: المدة				
19	How deep = (What de		ما عمق؟	تسأل عن: العمق				
20	How fast = (What sp		کم سرعة؟	تسأل عن: السرعة				
21	How hot = (What he		ما حرارة؟	تسأل عن: الحرارة				
22	How far = (What di	stance)	ما المسافة؟	تسأل عن: المسافة				



Test yourself

Change the following sentences into questions

They sometimes go to the club.	(Where) (How often)
Nada plays tennis every Sunday.	(What) (\Vho) (When)
Jana swims with Toka in the swimming pool.	(Who) (Who) (Where)
4 Ahmed travels to Aswan by train.	(Who) (Where) (How)
Nada washes the dishes in the evening.	(Who) (When) (What)
I play squash three times a week.	(How often) (What)
They are travelling to Luxor by plane.	(Where) (How)
Forouk is going to the bank to get some money.	(Who) (Why)
The king lived in a big castle.	(Who) (Where)
He saw a nice film on TV at ten o'clock yesterday.	(What) (When)
10 I went to the supermarket to buy some groceries.	(Where) (Why)
We ate fish and rice yesterday.	(When) (What)
Mona watered the flowers this morning.	(What) (When) (Who)
44 Ahmed will fix his car tomorrow.	(When) (Who) (What)
They will visit the Egyptian museum tonight.	(When) (What)
Jana will go to school on foot.	(Where) (Who) (How)
10 I travel to Paris twice a year.	(How often)
I have studied English for three hours.	(How long)
44 111000 011000 0110 10 01110 0110	(What size)(How much)
Quality Linda lives with her parents.	(Whom) (Who)
You should study hard to achieve your goals.	(Why) (What)
	(How many) (Where)



تنقس الأزمنة الى ثلاثة أقسام رئيسية:



Past 311



ولكا. قسم من هذه الأقسام الثلاثة أربعة فروع كما بلي:

Present	Past	Future			
Present simple	Past simple	Future simple			
Present continuous	Past continuous	Future continuous			
Present perfect	Past perfect	Future perfect			
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous	Future perfect continuous			

المضارع البسيط

Grammar

Present simple

Present Continuous

زمن المضارع البسيط

The Present Simple Tense

Formation



(in Active)

يتكون من التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافة مع (We / You / They ا/ فاعل جمع)

ه اضافت (s- es - jes) للفعل مع (t) المفار مفرد (s- es - jes) فاعل مفرد

watches	goes	brushes	dresses
carries	studies	cries	tries

نضيف للفعل (es) إذا انتهى بـ: (ch - sh - ss - o - x) نضيف للفعل (ies) إذا انتهى بـ y مسبوقا بحرف ساكن وتحذف y

- ✓ I play football on Fridays.
- √ They watch films at home.
- ✓ He plays football on Fridays.
- √ Jana wotches films at home.

Formation



(in Passive)



Object + (am / is / are) + P.P



- √ Football is played on Fridays.
- √ Films are watched at home by Jana.

Negative



(never +inf. /don't +inf.) من (المنفى مع (We / You / They مع (المنفى مع (

- ✓ I don't play football on Fridays. √ They never watch films at home.
 - (never +inf. + s / doesn't +inf.) ماعل مفرد) من (He / She / It) يتكون الجملة في النفي مع
- ✓ He doesn't play football on Fridays.
- ✓ Jana never watches films at home.

Question _____



📋 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع البسيط من:



? : inf الفاعل inf



🗐 مع (Does) فاعل مفرد) نستخدم (Do) مع (He / She / It) مع (Do) نستخدم (فاعل مفرد) نستخدم



🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع البسيط من:

? inf. الفاعل do ـ does اداة استفهام



√ What do you do on Fridays?

√ What does Jana watch at home?

√ When do you play football?

√ Where does Jana watch films?

Key words

V. be تأتى أظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد

🗐 يمكّن أن تأتي أظرف التكرار في بداية الجملة أو نهايتها

			🚆 ينس ال دي البراد السرار على بداية البرنس الو عب يست		
always	دائماً المارية المعالية المارية		Seif always cries when he is hungry.		
		Þ	Toka is always tired in the evenings.		
عادة usually = be used to + V + ing		•	Jana usually gets up early.		
			Jana is used to getting up early.		
often			She often eats pasta.		
sometimes			I sometimes walk to school.		
rarely - seldom - s	نادراً carcely	•	He rarely comes late.		
never	أبدا	•	I never drive into town.		
		E	I am never late for school.		
ever	حتى الآن (في السؤال) ver		Do you ever drive a car?		
every	کل کا	•	Every Friday, Jana goes to the club.		
now	الآن (في هذه الأيام)	-	ا work as a teacher now. حدث غير مستمر أثناء الكلام		
still	ما زال	•	She is still smart.		
Albana Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna		Successor.			

تعبر الكلمات التالية عن النفي never / rarely / seldom / scarcely / hardly وتأتي قبل الفعل أما إذا [كانت أول الجملة بأتى بعدها فعل مساعد (صيغة السؤال).

- ✓ She never tells lies.
- ✓ I seldom see my uncle.

Usage

الاستخدام

√ The earth goes round the sun.

- Never does she tell lies.
- Seldom do I see my uncle.

• يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق.

√ Water boils at 100° Centigrade...

· يستخدم للتعبير عن عادات في المضارع.

Usually = (be) in the habit of + inf. + ing = (be) used to + inf. + ing

Jana usually gets up early. = Jana is used to getting up early.

= Jana is in the habit of getting up early.

🗐 تستخدم no longer بمعنى (لم يعد) بدلا من used to ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

√ Toka used to live in Cairo. (no longer)

= Toka no longer lives in Cairo.

تستخدم any more / any longer بدلاً من used to بدلاً من any more / any longer مع نفى الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتى في نهاية الحملة:

✓ Toka used to live in Cairo. (any more / any longer)

Toka doesn't live in Cairo any more / any longer.

للحظ فعل الجملة الثانية: جملة التعقيب بعد but now تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم am - is - are نستخدم V. be نستخدم boj do - does

She used to get up early, but now she doesn't.



- ✓ I used to play with children but now I don't.
- ✓ Amr travels to work by train every day.
 ✓ She works as an engineer.
- ✓ Toka never gets up early.
 - يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية في المضارع عندما تكون الجملة الثانية تعبر عن المستقبل.
- ✓ After my father finishes his work, he will take us to the club.
- ✓ As soon as Mr. Ahmed finishes this book, he will do a pilgrimage.
- √ I won't come until you call me.

- يستخدم مع if الحالة الأولى والصفرية.
- √ If you study hard, you will succeed in your exams.
- √ If you heat water, it boils.

- 👽 يستخدم مع الجداول الزمنية في الستقبل وجداول المواعيد.
- ✓ The lesson starts at 7 o'clock.
 ✓ The plane takes off at 2 o'clock.
 - ◊ يستخدم للتعبير عن عدد مرات القيام بالحدث
- ✓ I get up at 8 o'clock every morning. ✓ How often do you go to the dentist?
- ✓ Julie doesn't drink tea very often.
- √ He usually goes away two or three times a year.
- ◊ يستخدم مع الأوامر والتعليمات

- You set the table and I will wash dishes.
 - ◘ يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والإدراك والعاطفة والتفكير والملكية بدلاً من المضارع المستمر.

like, dislike, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand, want, need, hate, see, forget, prefer, believe, mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own..etc.

- ► Toka is liking surfing the internet. (x)
- Toka likes surfing the internet.



المضارع البسيط (<mark>V.be</mark> في المضارع البسيط 🍵



صفة + (am not - isn't - aren't) النفي ≎ (am not - isn't - aren't)



✓ She is a doctor but she isn't clever.

ُ للحظ شكل <mark>V. have</mark> في المضارع البسيط



ل (don't have - doesn't have) + النفي (don't have - doesn't have) + اسم/ضمير



√ He has a house but he doesn't have a car.

🗐 هناك بعض الأفعال اللغة الانـجليزية دائماً ما تستخدم في أزمنة البسيط سواء (مضارع / ماضي / مستقبل)

apologise - suggest - advise - promise - accept - agree - refuse

√ I promise I won't be late.

(NOT I'm promising)

- √ What do you suggest I do to keep fit?
 - ⇒ I suggest that you go on a diet."
 - الحظ الفرق بين الحدث دائم الحدوث (نستخدم المضارع البسيط) ولكن إذا كان الحدث مؤقناً أو غير معتاد أستخدم المضارع المستمر .
- ✓ My father usually goes to his work by car but today he is going by bus.



زمن المضارع المستمر

The Present continuous Tense

(in Active) Formation (⊃ am (v. + inq)⊃ is he / she / it we / you / they are √ Look! They are reading novels. ✓ I am playing football at the moment. ✓ She is doing an operation. √ Jana is doing a research now. in Passive Formation A Object + (am / is / are) + being+ P.P √ A research is being done by Jana. √ Football is being played at the moment. Negative 2011 (isn't - aren't - am not) + V + ing √ They aren't reading novels. √ Jana isn't doing a research now. ✓ Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more. Question Man إ يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع البسيط من

(Am / Is / Are) الفاعل V + ing?

✓ Are you playing football now?

Yes, Iam.

√Are you enjoying the party? X No. I am not.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع البسيط من:

? V + ing الفاعل (am / is / are) أداة استفهام

√ What are you doing? √ Why is she crying?

⇒ I am watching TV.

⇒ Because her leg is aching.

Key words

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المضارع المستمر وللحظ أن كلمة **الناد** تأتي بين جزئي الفعا

ر ع رف عدد الله على بين جربي الفعال						
	At present, we are studying French.					
في هذه اللحظة	I'm eating the meals at this moment.					
	Toka is crying now.					
ما زال	She is still reading.					
انظر	Look! This pipe is leaking water.					
اسمع	Listen! He is singing a nice song.					
شاهد	▶ Watch! The train is coming.					
کن هادئاً	▶ Be quiet! The baby is sleeping.					
دائماً (للتعبير عن المضابقة	My little brother is always bothering me.					
یرتب	I arrange I am having dinner with my fiancée.					
اليوم	▶ You're working hard today.					
هذا الأسبوع /	The company I work for isn't doing so well this year.					
هذا العام	• -					
	في الحاضر في هذه اللحظة الآن ما زال انظر اسمع شاهد كن هادئا دائماً (للتعبير عن المضايقة يرتب اليوم					



Usage

الاستخدام

والأوالي التجازل

90.00	Nursella Marsella Mar					
C	﴾ نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تحدث في لحظة الكلام مع كلمات مثل :					
	now - at this moment - at present - still - look - listen - watch - hurry - quick					
	g.					
G	ليس من الضروري وجود كلمات دالة علي الزمن لكن الضروري الإحساس باستمرارية الحدث مثل:					
_ <	Keep quiet please, as I am studying. ✓ Quick! The bus is leaving.					
	Where is Ali? - I don't know I think he is reading at the library.					
) نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل.					
	We are travelling to London tomorrow as arranged.					
	They bought the tickets. They are having dinner outside. المارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مؤقت					
	At a café, I like drinking coffe but this time I am drinking tea.					
	• نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير حدث يحدث الميس في لحظة الكلام، لكن في فترة معينة اهذا الأسبوع ، هذا العام.					
	Hani will travel to America, so he is learning English this year.					
	[هذا معناه أنه بدأ في الدراسة ولم ينته منها بعد]					
	We are studying biology this term.					
) نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث في تزايد.					
 ✓	The pollution of the world is rising very fast.					
	The problem of pollution is getting more and more serious.					
_ ✓	Do you get better? النظ النطأ Are you getting better?					
	و نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن عادات سيئة مع ظروف التكرار.					
\checkmark	He is always leaving his clothes on the floor.					
	الحظ الإختلاف Notice The Difference					
~~~	Notes on the simple & continuous present					
	َ هُذُه الأفعالَ لا تستخدم في الْأَزْمَنْة المستمرة هذه الأفعال تدل على الحالة وليس فعلُ أو خركة:					
<b>1</b>	<u>verbs of the senses</u> : feel, hear, see, smell, taste, notice, etc.					
<b>√</b>	verbs of emotions and preferences: like, dislike, love, hate, fear, mind, want,					
1	wish, need, prefer, admire,etc.					
	✓ <u>verbs of perception</u> , belief, knowledge, ownership: think, believe, know, understand, expect, remember, forget, hope, have, own, belong (to), etc.					
✓	✓ <u>verbs which describe permanent states</u> : be, cost, weigh, seem, appear,etc.					
	بعض الأفُعال منها تُستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة طبقاً للمعنى.					
دما	عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [يمتلـك] لا يمكـن اسـتخدامه فـي المضـارع المسـتمر أمـا عنــد					
	have يأتي بمعنى [يأخذ أو يتناول] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .					
✓.	يافذ. They have a wonderful car. يملك ✓ I'm having a bath now					
	عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [يبدو] لا يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر أما عندما يعن					
-ي	" "					
1	[يشعر] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر . [يشعر] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .					
./	اییدو ?How do you feel about your school					
	How are you feeling now? يشعر					
ω2	عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [يعتقد] لا يمكن اسـتخدامه فـي المضـارع المسـتمر إنمـا عنـــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ					
	يعني [يفكر في] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .					
	think she is clever. يعتقد					
√	l' <mark>m thinking</mark> of buying a new car.       يفكر					

71





	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or c	ł:						
Nurses after patients in hospitals.									
4	(a) has looked		© looks	d look					
2	We need to leave so		<b>©</b> 100112						
•	@ get		© got	d gets					
3	The earthr								
			© goes	<b>d</b> go					
4	The café at	<b>b</b> went 7.30 in the morning.							
	@ opning		© open	d is opening					
5	II won't be	late.							
	@ promise	<b>b</b> am promising	© promises	<b>d</b> promised					
6	We can't play tennis	s today because it	••••						
_	@ rains	<b>b</b> rained	© is raining	d rain					
7		He the children							
_		<b>b</b> is counting		<b>d</b> count					
8	_	to organizing everything							
4	@ do			d didn't					
9		in the streets. We play		(A) de coult ulaux					
44	a play never	<b>b</b> are never played	© never play	@ doesn't play					
		in October, 12		(d)a.uld ataut					
44		<b>b</b> start		d would start					
aa		ought for me fit	me.	(A) because					
44	@ doesn't	(b) don't	© isn't	d hasn't					
UZ	I don't have anywne	ere to live right now. I	ior an aparui	d looked					
46		<b>b</b> look	Clooking	d) looked					
UE	The sun us		© gave	d giving					
99	@ give	y family next week.	© gave	w giving					
WW	(a) visited		© is visiting	d has visited					
16		hing soon. I hun	_						
W.	@ got		© are getting	d am getting					
	Fill in gap:								
16	Rice grow	in cold climates		and the same of th					
	_								
How often you go to the dentist?  Bacteria hard to see by naked eye.									
	This knife is used		•						
Seldom does she shopping with her mother.									
		ke, then correct it:							
	The world changes. Things never stay the same.								
Ali goes usually away two or three times a year.									
Toka doesn't drinks tea very often.									
	Ahmed is never late. He's always getting to work on time.								
V.	(E) I'm thinking Mary is Canadian, but I'm not sure.								





	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	i:	8		
_	Robert away two or three times a year.					
		<b>b</b> is usually going		d goes usually		
2		- Better than before.				
	a you are feeling	<b>b</b> do you feel	© are you feeling	d do you felt		
3	I used to read scien	nce fiction stories, but I	it now.			
		<b>b</b> read		d am used to reading		
4		orts before I hor		_		
4		<b>b</b> had gone		d go		
6		newhere to live, I will ser				
A		<b>b</b> had found		<b>d</b> found		
Q		eir car any more. They				
4	@ tried	<b>b</b> try	© are trying	d tries		
U	I my bed w	hen I get up.				
6	a make always	<b>b</b> always make	(C) have always mo	ade @ always makes		
Ö	Ahmed tak					
6	doesn't use	<b>b</b> any longer	© no longer	any more		
6		ypt. It is usually hot and		A		
46		<b>b</b> has often	C doesn't offen	won't oπen		
	Calm down! I		@ am listanina	(d) was listening		
99	Refere I Ad	<b>(b) listened</b> lel tomorrow, I will buy h	vim a procent	was listening		
WW		<b>b</b> am going to visit		d will visit		
16	Every day my roon	n while I am at so	chool	W WIII VISII		
		<b>b</b> was being tidied		d tidied		
	Our rubbish		O 13 Halea	· ilaica		
44		<b>b</b> is collected	© was collecting	(d) is collecting		
14		He doesn't do anything		© io comeaning		
	(a) are always	<b>b</b> is always being	© always is	d is always		
16	It isn't true what the	ey said. They				
	@ lie		© is lying	<b>d</b> lies		
	Fill in gap:					
		o'clock every morning.				
	•	with you now because	my home	vork.		
	anybody ne	•	•			
	the state of the s	ework to do every day.				
	-	ome to school late. He is	s so nunctual			
			3 30 pariotaar.			
		ke, then correct it:		[]		
		es to open the door of yo e people? What do they		[]		
		e people? what do they anting something to eat.		[]		
		to leave." "OK, I come.'		[]		
	I must go now. It ge			[ ]		





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d	•						
	************************************	much noise. I	***************************************						
ų					dring				
(a) tried (b) try (c) am trying (d) tries (d) No! I've lost my phone again. I things.					IIIes				
4	Chickens loss	<b>b</b> always loses	O always am lesina		am always losina				
8	Nancy of giv		C always alli losing	<b>U</b>	ani aiways iosing				
q	(a) thinking	<b>b</b> thinks	@ is thinking		think				
4		for such a larg		•	1111111				
				<b>(1)</b>	worked				
6	He is often late for so	<b>b</b> working chool but he abs	sent from it		Worked				
		<b>b</b> never is							
6	The rich mud	reaches Egyptian farn	nland.	•					
		<b>b</b> no longer		<b>(d)</b>	any longer				
7		ut other people. He		_	,				
_		<b>b</b> is being		<b>(d</b> )	being is				
8		hy he so selfish							
	(a) is	<b>b</b> is being	© is been	<b>d</b> )	being is				
9	This room L	et's open a window.							
	a is smelling		© smells	<b>d</b>	smelt				
10	Hi, Jana the	party?							
	Have you enjoy	<b>b</b> Do you enjoy	© Are you enjoying	<b>d</b>	you are enjoying				
11	Listen to those peop	le. What language	?						
-		<b>b</b> they are speaking	© do they speak	<b>d</b>	are they speaking				
12	Excuse me,								
44		<b>b</b> are you speaking	© do you speak	<b>d</b>	does you speak				
13	What's all that noise?			_					
AA		<b>b</b> happens	© happening	<b>d</b> )	is happening				
14		He a shower.							
aa		<b>b</b> is having		<b>(d</b> )	had				
<b>U</b> E		chool late. He is so pur			• • • • • • • • •				
		<b>b</b> comes he	© does ne come	<b>a</b>	is he come				
ALC: UNITED IN	Fill in gap:	A A A							
	Liars are people who								
	The water Ca	•							
	Water at 100	_							
19	I didn't use to the da	rk but now Iit.							
20	Sama is energetic. T	his means she	lazy.						
	Find the mistake	e, then correct it:							
		e world increases very	fast.		[]				
	What goes on?		i.		[]				
		ery happy at the mome			[]				
	_	es. Every year things a			[]				
25	You always play com	iputer games. You shoi	uld do something mo	You always play computer games. You should do something more active. []					



## زمسن المضارع التس **The Present Perfect Tense**

#### (in Active) Formation A



He / She / It) فاعل مفرد) (I / We / You / They فاعل جمع / I / فاعل جمع ₩ has અ have



- ✓ They have watched TV.
- ✓ He has sent me an e-mail this evening.
- √ Jana has cooked the dinner.
- √ I have seen that play.

## **Formation**









- √ TV has been watched by them.
- √ This film has been watched by them.
- √ The dinner has been cooked by Jana.
- √ Some meals have been prepared.

## Negative





(He / She / It / فاعل مفرد) (ا فاعل جمع / I / We / You / They فاعل جمع / الله على الله على الله الله على الله ع અ hasn't haven't



√ They haven't watched TV.

✓ Jana hosn't cooked the dinner.

#### Question _____



پتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع التام من:



? ..... p.p الفاعل p.p .....?



√ Has Jana cooked the dinner?

Yes, she has.

No. she hasn't.

پتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع التام من:



? ..... p.p الفاعل has / have أداة استفهام



- ✓ How long have you learned English? 

  ☐ I have learned English for ten years.
- √ Where have you been?

⇒ I have been to the club.

## Key words



#### O Just - already - ever - never أبدأ تهأ

iust have / has بالفعل already



- ✓ She's never said sorry for what she did.
- ✓ Are you hungry?

- ⇒ I've already booked my flight home.
  - ⇒ No, I've just had lunch.
- 🗐 للحظ استخدام ever مع النفي والسؤال والتفضيل: ✓ Jana hasn't ever finished her homework.
- √ Has Jana ever travelled abroad?
- ✓ No student has ever come today.
- √ "Days" is the best novel I have ever read.



- او such أو للتعبير عن النفي: ما never في جملة بها before أو للتعبير عن النفي:
- √ I have never seen a snake before.
- ✓ I have never seen such a beautiful girl.





- ✓ Mr Ahmed has lived here for ten years.
- √ Jana has travelled for the last week.
- √ I have lived here since my childhood.
- ✓ She has studied French since 2019.
- ✓ She has studied French since last year.



- ✓ I have played this game since I was five. It is a year since I met Ali.
- ✓ She has studied English since she started her school.
- ✓ It's (has been) a long time since I saw him.
- √ It is a year since meeting Ali.



- √ Toka hasn't registered for class yet.
- ✓ I haven't finished my breakfast lately.
- ✓ She has cooked the meal so far.
- √ I have studied French recently.
- √ Has she emailed you yet?
- √ They have lived here up till now.



- الدظ استخدام already في نهاية السؤال إذا كان المعنى يدل علي"دهشة / تعجب" أو الإجابة علي السؤال كانت الحالية أي أنه قام بالحدث:
  - √ Have you done your homework (yet already)? That's too fast.

# O How long - still - over (years - centuries).... - in the last.... It is the (first - second - third - last) time ......

- √ How long have you worked there?
- ✓ I've met many people in the last few days.
- ✓ Over the years, we have studied English.
- √ She still hasn't said sorry to me.
- ✓ It is the first time I have ever seen this film. (لاحظ استخدام ever مع هذا التركيب)

## 6 today / this evening / this year ..../ this ......

- 🗐 يتم استخدامها في المضارع التام مع الفترات التي لم تنتهي أثناء وقت الكلام:
- ✓ I've drunk four cups of coffee today. ✓ Have you had a holiday this year?
- ✓ I haven't seen Tom this morning.
  ✓ Jana hasn't worked very hard this term.

## **Usage**

#### الاستخداد

- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداثٌ بدأت في الماضي ومازال أثرها مستمرًا.
- √ Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. He has lost his key.
  - يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث انتهى في الماضي ولكن له نتيجة الأن.
- √ The road is closed. There's been an accident.
  - يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث تمت حديثاً.
- √ I've just finished my first year at university.
- √ I've already told him twice.

عن أحداث لم تحدث بعد.

- √ She's never played tennis.
- ⊙ يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرة شخص أو للتحدث عن خبرة سابقة.
- √ Have you ever been to London?
- √ I have already been to London.
  - ◘ يستخدم المضارع التام عند التحدث عن فترة من الوقت تستمر من الماضي حتى الآن.
- √ Susan really loves that film. She's seen it eight times!
- √ We've never had a car.

ANTS

Never give up on a dream just because of the time it will take to accomplish it. The time will pass anyway

أبداً لا تتخلى عن حلمك فقط لأنه يتطلب وقتاً طويلاً لتحقيقه، فالوقت سيمضى على أية حال

GIANTS



## Glants' Gramm

## ملاحظات هامة على المضارع التام

٨ لاحظ الفرق بين.

## have (has) gone / have (has) been

- √ I have been to Alex. = I visited Alex and came back. انفسته عدت
- ✓ I have gone to Alex. = I visited Alex and I am still staying there. ذهبت ومازلت هناك الم ارجع 🗐 للحظ استخدام have been to إذا وجد أكثر من مكان أو الذهاب للمكان أكثر من مرة أو عدم الذهاب للمكان وللحظ أن:
- √ been (to) = visited:
- ✓ I've never been to China. Have you been there?

### Try to understand

Dave: Have you travelled a lot. Jane? Jane: Yes, I've been to lots of places.

Dave: Really? Have you ever been to China?

Jane: Yes, I've been to China twice.

Dave: What about India?

Jane: No. I haven't been to India.

## have (has) been in = have (has) gone to

✓ I have been in Luxor. I will come next week.

= I have gone to Luxor. I will come next week.

@ لاحظ الفرق بين:

### How long - How long ago

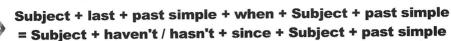
- √ (How long How long ago) have you been studying English?

🗗 لاحظ استخدام المضارع التام مع الروابط الزمنية before / as soon as.. after / when / ويليه جملة في المستقبل

After I have finished my studies, I will travel abroad.

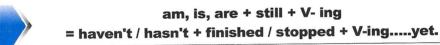
و عند استغدام ago بدلاً من since / for نحول المضارع التام إلى ago عند استغدام

- ✓ It has rained for two hours.
  - = It began to rain two hours ago.
- She has played football for 6 months.
  - = She started to play football 6 months ago.





- I last saw my uncle when I was on his farm.
  - = I haven't seen my uncle since I was on his farm.
- ✓ I last took an aspirin 3 days ago. = I haven't taken an aspirin for 3 days.



✓ He is still doing his homework.

= He hasn't finished doing his homework yet.





## المضارع التام الستمر The Present perfect continuous





He / She / It) فاعل مفرد)

**№** has been ا فاعل حمد / I / We / You / They) ما have been



- √ They have been watching TV all night.
- ✓ Jana has been cooking lunch for 3 hours.
- ✓ It has been raining for two hours.
- ✓ Where have you been? I've been looking for you everywhere.

## Formation _____



(in Passive)



Object + (has / have) + been + P.P



✓ TV has been watched by them.

✓ The dinner has been cooked by Jana.

## Negative _____



He / She / It) فاعل مفرد)

અ hasn't been







✓ Ali hasn't been feeling well recently.

#### Question 112-11



🗐 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع التام المستمر من:



Has / Have الفاعل been + V + ing ......?



- Yes. I have.

- No. I haven't.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع التام المستمر من:



? ...... been + V + ing الفاعل has / have اداة استفهام



- ✓ Where have you been?
- ✓ I've been looking for you everywhere.
- √ Why are you clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?

## **Key words**

## الكلمات الدالة

🗐 عض كلمات المضارع التام وأكثر استخدامنا لهذا الزمن يكون مع [all, for, since]:

since	منذ	▶ He has been travelling since 2010.
for	ىدة	She has been studying for five hours now.
all	طوال	▶ He has been working all day.
How long	كم طول المدة	▶ How long have you been waiting for me?
lately	مؤخرا	I haven't been eating much lunch lately.

### **Usage**



🗐 يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمراً في المضارع ويمكن استمراره في المستقبل

- ✓ He has been living here for three years now.
- √ Toka has been studying all day.
- ✓ I have been working as a teacher since 2010.







- 🗐 يستخدم مع الاحداث التي تتكرر خلال فترة زمنية
- ✓ Mai is a very good tennis player. She's been playing since she was eight.
- ✓ Every morning they meet in this café. They've been going there for years.

## الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

- إلى يستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وانتهي و لكن له أثر أما المضارع التــام المســتمر يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمراً في الحاضر مع إحتمالية استمراره في المستقبل وهناك حالات لا نستخدم فيها المضارع التام المستمر ونستخدم بدلاً منها المضارع التام:
  - ◘ هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً وهي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و المعرفة.
- - 🕥 إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر بل نستخدم المضارع التام (لأن الحدث علي فترات متقاطعة).
  - ✓ Ahmed has finished typing three reports. (has been finishing ▼)
  - ✓ She has drunk five cups of tea. (has been drinking ♥)

### (break down / stop / close / open / end / finish....)

- ✓ She is late for the meeting. Her car has broken down.
- ✓ I have known / had / heard etc. is the present perfect simple.
- ✓ I have been learning / been waiting / been doing etc.is the present perfect continuous
- و المضارع التام للسؤال بـ (How much, How many or How many times) والمضارع التام المستمر (bow long) والمضارع التام المستمر السؤال بـ (how long) مع الاشياء التي مازلت تعدث:
- ☐ ✓ How long have you been reading that book?
  - √ How much of that book have you read?
  - √ They've played tennis three times this week.
  - ✓ I'm learning Arabic, but I haven't learnt very much yet.

## **Compare these examples**

- ✓ My hands are very dirty. I've been repairing my bike.
- ✓ Joe has been eating too much recently. He should eat less.
- ✓ It's nice to see you again. What have you been doing since we last met?
- √ Where have you been? Have you been playing tennis?
- √ My bike is OK again now. I've repaired it.
- ✓ Somebody has eaten all the chocolates. The box is empty.
- ✓ Where's the book I gave you? What have you done with it?
- √ Have you ever played tennis?

#### الفرق بين المضارع المستمر و المضارع التام المستمر

#### I am doing (present continuous)

- Don't disturb me now. I'm working.
- ▶ We need an umbrella. It's raining.
- ► Hurry up! We're waiting.

#### I have been doing (present perfect continuous)

- ▶ I've been working hard. Now I'm going to have a break.
- ▶ The ground is wet. It's been raining.
- ▶ We've been waiting for an hour.





-	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:				
		I you get ang			
4	@ saw	<b>b</b> was seen	© have been seeing	d have seen	
2	Yara her key	/. She can't get into th	ne house.		
4		<b>b</b> has lost		<b>d</b> losing	
3		students studied Frer			
A	For then	<b>b</b> For when	© Since when	d How long ago	
4	Once I this	novel, I'll give it to my	old friend.		
a	(a) have read	<b>b</b> has read	© had read	d was reading	
6	It's ages since I				
a	(a) had seen	<b>b</b> saw	© have seen	d see	
0		e your work?	_		
4	@ yet		<b>C</b> already	<b>d</b> never	
V		to this place.			
	@ I am	<b>b</b> I have gone	© I've been	d I went	
Ö	Have you ever				
	@ gone		<b>©</b> stayed	<b>d</b> visited	
E	We've never				
44	@ gone		© been	d go	
UU		party because she			
44	@ caught	<b>b</b> has caught	© have caught	d had caught	
UU	How long m	arried?			
44	(a) had you been	<b>b</b> have you been	© have you gone	d have you	
UZ	It 's exactly four yea	rs I last played	d football with my frie		
44	© since	<b>b</b> when	© for	d ago	
<b>UE</b>	Sama her po	en. That's why she isn	n't writing.		
	(a) had lost		©was lost	d was being lost	
UG		airo, I haven't seen my			
44	@ were	<b>b</b> was		d had been	
UE		you as he his			
		<b>b</b> has lost	© had lost	<b>d</b> losing	
	Fill in gap:				
16	🕅 In't seen Tom for three days.				
17	🕯 I haven't seen Tom Monday.				
	€ They haven't had a holiday ten years.				
19	Mai is writing emails. She's writing emails all morning.				
20	They've been playing tennis 2 o'clock.				
	Find the mistake, t		IUUN.		
64					
66	Jana is here now. Sh	ne has gone to the ma	rket.	<u>[</u>	
66	Solly has be a seemed.	, we haven't seen eac	n other again.	<u></u>	
60	Jany nas been work	ing here since six mo	ntns.	[	
06	Where have you has	eaten anything for br	eaktast.	[	
AA	vviicie liave vuu pee	u: nave vou been bla	ived tennis?		



# Mark على المعالم المع

_		answer from a, b, c or		and the second of the second o		
1	I have written stories	sas long as I o				
	@ for	<b>b</b> since	© while	<b>d</b> after		
2	I last met Ali when w	e were at your party.	Since then, I	him.		
		<b>b</b> hadn't met	0	d wasn't meeting		
3		oly over the past three				
	@ rose	<b>b</b> have risen	© had risen	<b>d</b> rise		
4	James is on holiday.					
	@ is gone	<b>b</b> has gone	© has been	d have gone		
6	Everything is going	well. We any [	problems so far.			
	@ didn't have	<b>b</b> don't have	Chaven't had	d hasn't had		
6			e second time this			
	(a) has happened		Chappened	d is happening		
7	You're out of breath	? running?	_	0 -		
_		<b>b</b> Have you	© Have you been	d Do you		
8	Sally has been work	ing here				
_	1 for six months	<b>b</b> since six months	©six months ago	d in six months		
9	It raining for	r a while, but now it's	raining again.			
	@ stopped	<b>b</b> has stopped	©was stopped	d has been stopping		
		I saw many places I'v				
4	@ gone	<b>b</b> been to		d arrived		
Q		an; I've never eaten m		A al baina		
4	a had always been	<b>b</b> have always been	©was never been	d was always being		
Q	Ahmed has just sen	t me an email. He	to me since last I	montn.		
4			© hadn't written	dhasn't been writing		
	We our relat	tives for a year. They	are too busy.	d haven't met		
A		b haven't been met		u lidvelli illei		
	She hard to	r about eight hours no	OW.	d will work		
44	a) has been working	<b>b</b> is working	©works	W WIII WOLK		
<b>U</b>	Egypt much	over the years.	© ic changing	d has changed		
NAME OF TAXABLE PARTY.		<b>b</b> had changed	C is crianging	G Has changes		
	> Fill in gap:					
	It's been raining					
1	It a long tim	e since we last met.				
1	He has been trainin	g hard the las	st Olympic games.			
1	You are kidding! Ha	ive you drunk all the j	uice?			
		him Christma				
	Find the mistake,					
6			2 That's amazing	[		
		reading that novel yet				
		doing this work since svillage at the age of				
			JC 4 CI1.			
	How much of that book do you read?  I haven't met the minister already. It's the first time to meet him.					



# A dvanced Exercises فيم نفسك

	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	rd:		
	Our block of flats			north and decorate and accounts of	
	a have built	<b>b</b> has been built	© has built	d have been built	
2		nool, he will be spendi			
	<b>a</b> leaving	<b>b</b> has left	© had left	<b>d</b> left	
3		play tennis since she			
	@ isn't	<b>b</b> wasn't	© hasn't been	d hasn't gone	
4	I such a tricl	ky person all my life lo	ong.		
	a never have seen	<b>b</b> have never seen	© never seen	d not seen	
6	A bad accident	place on Cairo-Al	ex desert road recent	tly.	
	@ took	<b>b</b> has taken	© has been taken	d had taken	
6	Toka very h	ard this term.			
_		<b>b</b> hadn't worked		d don't work	
7	Wagah is very tired.	He has very	hard all day.		
_	<b>a</b> been working	<b>b</b> working	© been worked	<b>d</b> worked	
8	They have played te	ennis three times	• • • • •		
_	a last week	<b>b</b> next week	© a week	d this week	
9	Since her, I				
44	@ seen		<b>©</b> seeing	d see	
10	There any n	ews about Sara since	she moved to Beni S	uef.	
44	@ wasn't	<b>b</b> weren't	© haven't been	d hasn't been	
00	It's two years				
44	(a) that I don't see	<b>b</b> that I haven't seen	© since I didn't see	d since I last saw	
12	I you five tin	nes this morning. Whe	ere have you been?		
44	(a) have called	<b>b</b> was called	© had called	d was calling	
<b>GE</b>	he worked a	as a football trainer, h	e has earned a lot of r		
		<b>b</b> Having		<b>d</b> After	
		the last time w			
aa	(a) while	<b>b</b> when	© for	<b>d</b> since	
		on the shore this			
-		<b>b</b> hasn't seen	© had been seen	d have been seen	
All	Fill in gap:				
		s. She's sent lots of er	mails week.		
17	They've mar	ried for ten years.			
18	It's two years since	l last Nada.			
		been driving?" "Since	e I 17."		
	She's been waiting.				
	Find the mistake, t	***************************************			
21	***************************************	noliday since ten year	c		
22	I've been knowing al	bout the problem for a	a long time		
23	It was ages since we	e went to the cinema.	a long time.	[	
24	They are married for	r 20 vears			
	They are married for 20 years.				





	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:			
1	The museum	. by thousands of peo	ple this year.			
		<b>b</b> has been visited		<b>d</b> visit		
2	That's the best pres	entation		,		
			© I used to hear	d I've ever heard		
			we met in Alexandria			
	@ while	<b>b</b> when	© for	<b>d</b> since		
4	It is the most excitin	g journey I have	been to. I have not	had such a journey.		
	@ ago	<b>b</b> never	© ever	d yet		
6		river Iup till n				
4			© have never seen	d had never seen		
6		s. How can I go to the				
4	•	<b>b</b> has missed	_	d missed		
7		, Rawan in he				
4			Clives	<b>d</b> lived		
8	He hasin Lond	lon for three years no	w. He is doing post gr	aduate studies there.		
4			© been	d done		
G	Ali and his family ha	ve travelled since				
44			© he gets married	(d) married		
UU		don. This means that I		<b>A</b>		
44		<b>b</b> won't be		d was		
UU		I will wait for him unti	_	(A) hard mana		
46		<b>b</b> has gone		d had gone		
UG		xtreme poverty becat	use all the money she  © has been lost	d) is being lost		
10	a been lost		I there again.	w is being losi		
WG.	a didn't go	<b>b</b> wasn't	Cweren't	d haven't been		
14	I five clients		C WCICITI			
44			© was met	(d) meet		
16	Lonly bought my nev	w car last week, but I	5000km. with	it so far.		
	a already driven	(b) have already drive	en © had already drive	en <b>d</b> drove		
	Fill in gap:					
-		har Amin? R. Ha has	to the superm	arket		
	_			iai Not.		
	Manal hasn't phoned us the summer holiday. My father has to America on business and he is still there.					
12.7				ere.		
		has there sin				
20	The dishes are clea	nWho them	?			
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:				
21	Salah hasn't trained	with the team when	his injury in the final.	[]		
		ysics since the last w		[]		
-		I've never eaten shri		[]		
-	I have passed this to		•	[]		
	He has lived in his hometown for the last visit.					

## Riants' Gramm



# زمن الماضي التسبي

# The Past Simple Tense

## Formation ( )

in Active



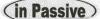
التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة ( d - ed - ied ) أو حفظ الأفعال الغير منتظمة.



- √ Ava went to the cinema.
- ✓ The police stopped me on my way home last night.
- √ We saw Toka in town a few days ago.

## Formation :- --







Object + (was / were) + P.P



√ The film was watched at home by Jana.

### Negative .





التصريف الثاني + never - التصريف الثاني + didn't



- √ They didn't invite us to the party, so we didn't go.
- ✓ I never got up late when I was young.

#### Question





يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المّاضي البسيط من



- ✓ Did you play football vesterday?
- Yes, I did.

- No, I didn't.

✓ Did you go out last night?

Yes, I went to the cinema, but I didn't enjoy the film much.

🧻 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي البسيط من:



? ...... : inf الفاعل + did اداة استفهام

? ...... ? الفاعل Did



- √ What did you do at the weekend?
- ⇒ I didn't do anything.

√ When did Mr Thomas die?

⇒ About ten years ago.

#### Key words الكلمات الدالة

#### وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي البسيط مثل ولاحظ أنهم باتوا أول الجملة و أخرها

	2 . 02 2	•	20 " ' 2 ' 2 ' 2 ' 2 ' 2 ' 2 ' 2 ' 2 ' 2 '
yesterday	أمس	•	I sent an e-mail to my friend yesterday.
ago	مند	•	This house was built three years ago.
last	السابق	•	Seif wrote his first novel last year.
In	في (سنة سابقة)	•	Ahmed was born in 1986.
in the past	في الماضي	•	In the past, the wind was used to sail ships.
once/ one day	مرة		Once, I had a terrible accident.
How long ago	متی		How long ago did you start studying English?
in ancient time	في عصور قديم	•	These pyramids were built in ancient time.
the other day	منذ بضعة ايام	•	I met Farouk in Beni Suief the other day.
		discourse.	



يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات الأتية ويعبر عن ماضي غير حقيقي.

ماضي بسيط + فاعل + 1) I wish (1)	▶ I wish Toka studied well.
2) It's (high) time + فاعل + ماضي بسيط	▶ It's time she studied English.
3) I would rather + فاعل	▶ I would rather she studied well.
ماضي بسيط + فاعل + suppose / imagine	▶ Suppose you inherited five million dollars, what would you do?

## Usage



- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي
- ✓ He visited his uncle yesterday. He had his lunch and went out.
- ✓ Aya passed her exam because she studied very hard.
  - ♥ يستخدم الماضي البسيط لوصف أحداث تتبع بعضها (سرد احداث قصة/ رواية / موقف /....)
- F ✓ He did his homework then slept.
  - - ✓ Once, Aya found a wallet, then she went to the police.
      (suppose / imagine) للتعبير عن النصيحة و الوضع الافتراضي (If) للتعبير عن النصيحة و الوضع الافتراضي (عبير عن العالمة الثانية)
- ✓ If she studied hard, he would succeed.
  - ✓ If I trained hard, I would win the race.
  - 🗗 يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الروابط الزمنية مثل (..after/ as soon as / before) بشرط أن يكون الزمن الآخر ماضي
- ✓ After he had studied, he slept.
- ✓ Mai had had dinner before she watched TV.
  - ✓ Mona didn't come until Toka had invited her.
- ✓ No sooner had I finished studying, than I watched TV.
  - پستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادات و أفعال متكررة في الماضي مع اظرف التكرار:

#### always / usually / sometimes / every.....

- ✓ When I was young, I usually played with my friends every day.
- I always did my homework at night but I no longer do.
- He drove into town every day last week
  - √ He always got up late last year.

عن في عادة في النسيط للتعبير عن في عادة في الماضي مع



used to+inf. (تعبر عن عادة كانت تعدث في الماضي ولم تعد تعدث الآن) didn't use to+inf. = never used to+ inf. النفي كلم يعتاد أن use to + inf. السؤال كالم

- ✓ I used to playfootball when I was young, but now I don't.
- √ When I was young, I didn't use to get up late.
- ✓ Did you use to get up early?
  - جملة التعقيب بعد **but now** تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم **do does** إذا كان فعل **[** الجملة ليس V. be أما إذا كان V. be نستخدم **am - is - are**
- √ I used to sleep late, but now I don't.
- √ She used to get up early, but now she doesn't.
- √ She used to beactive, but now she isn't.
- √ They used to be lazy, but now they aren't.



🗐 لاحظ الفرق سن: am - is - are – get(s) used to (V+ing)(n) بعتاد على (تعبر عن عادة تحدث في الحاض ✓ She is used to getting up early. ✓ I'm used to playing football. inf. تأتى يوعنى (يستخدم لــــ) ويليها (am - is – are) used to للحظ أن [ ✓ Cotton is used to make clothes. √ The wind is used to sail ships. 🗐 للحظ أن: .any more.. مضارع بسيط منفي + الفاعل = | مضارع بسيط no longer + الفاعل = الفاعل الفاعل ✓ He used to smoke = He no longer smokes. = He doesn't smoke any more (longer). الدظ شكل **V. be** في الماضي التسبط: The past of be (am / is / are)  $\Im$  was / were ✓ I was angry because they were late. ✓ Was the weather good when you were on holiday? ✓ They weren't able to come because they were so busy. ✓ Did you go out last night or were you too tired? زمن الماضي الستمر The Past Continuous Tense Formation (in Active) was / were + (V +ing) الفاعل ✓ This time last year I was living in Brazil. ✓ They were watching TV yesterday evening. ✓ Jana was cooking dinner all day yesterday. (in Passive) Formation ( ) Object + (was / were) + being + P.P ✓ TV was being watched vesterday evening. ✓ Dinner was being prepared by Jana. **Negative** wasn't / weren't + (V +ing) √ They weren't watching TV yesterday evening. ✓ Jana wasn't preparing dinner. Question / السفال 🗐 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في الماضي المستمر من: Was / Were الفاعل (V +ing) ......? √ Was Jana cooking dinner? - No. she wasn't - Yes, she was 🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي المستمر من:

✓ What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night? 
☐ I was doing my homework.

? ...... (V +ing) الفاعل was / were اداة استفهام



## Key words

الكلمات الدالة



- 🧊 نستخدم بعد while ماضي مستمر والجملة الثانية ماضي بسيط:
- حدث قطع آخر While I was watching TV, the light went out. حدث قطع آخر
- ✓ The light went out while I was watching TV.
- ✓ As I was watching TV, my father came. ✓ Just as she was cooking, she fainted.



📑 يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع while في الماضي المستمر:

✓ While Jana was watching TV, Toka was studying English. حدثان مستمران



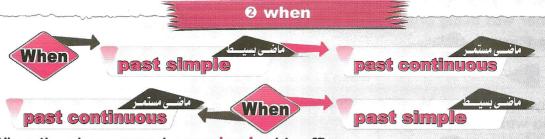
🗐 يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بعد while إذا كان الفعل الأساسي verb to be:

√ While I was at street, I fell off my bike.

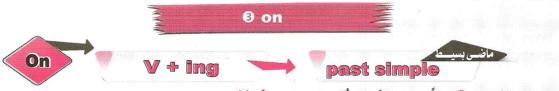


🖠 إذا لم يأتي بعد **while** فاعل يأتي بعدها (V+ing) بشرط ان يكون فاعل الجملتين واحداً:

✓ While playing, I fell down.



- √ When the phone rang, he was leaving his office.
- ✓ He was leaving his office when the phone rang.
- √ It was raining when I got up.



V+ing ویأتی بعدها On بدلاً من when ویأتی بعدها 🥤

- ✓ On arriving, he found the light on.
- ✓ On seeing the accident, I called the police.

on (seeing - hearing - reaching)

## Afants' Arammar



#### 4 during



noun

past simple

Noun و یأتي بعدها  $\mathbf{during}$  بدلاً من while یمکن استخدام  $\equiv$ 

- ✓ During the party, I received many presents.
- ✓ During the game, he got hurt.

## ـ كلمة تدل على الماضي و قبلها أو بعدها فترة زمنية 🧿

- ✓ Jana was studying at seven yesterday.
- √ They were studying English at 7 o'clock last Sunday.

## Usage

الاستخدام

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي.
- √ He was playing all morning yesterday.
  - يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما وقع حدث أُخّر.
- ✓ Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
- √ I hurt my back while I was working in the garden.
- √ I was walking along the road when I saw Ali. So I stopped, and we had a chat.
  - 🕜 يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي.
- ✓ While she was preparing dinner, he was watching TV.

## Important Notes

- 🕥 لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر و الماضي التام المستمر:
- √ I was doing my homework all day yesterday.
- √ I had been doing my homework all day yesterday before I slept.
  - 🕜 لاحظ استخدام because في الماضي المستمر:
- ✓ I couldn't answer the phone because I was having a shower.
- ✓ He couldn't reply to his friends because he was praying.
  - 🕜 هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً و هي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و اللكية و المعرفة.
- ✓ We were good friends. We knew each other well. (NOT were knowing)
- √ I was enjoying the party, but Mai wanted to go home. (NOT was wanting)

#### الفرق بين الماضي البسيط و الماضي المستمر

#### Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

Past continuous (in the middle of an action)

- √ I was walking home when I met Dan. (in the middle of walking home)
- √ Toka was watching TV when we arrived.

#### Past simple (complete action)

- √ I walked home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
- √ Toka watched TV a lot when she was ill last year.
  Compare:
- ✓ When Jana arrived, we were having dinner.
   (= we had already started before she arrived)
- √ When Jana arrived, we had dinner. (= Jana arrived, and then we had dinner)







CHARLE.							
		answer from a, b, c o		<u></u>			
1		conference, he					
_		<b>b</b> has given		d had	given		
2		Sharm El-Sheik, he					
	<b>a</b> sunbathed	<b>b</b> was sunbathing	© have sunbathed	d woul	d sunbathe		
3	My purse las	st week.					
	a stole	<b>b</b> stolen	© was stolen	d steal			
4	While studying, he	asleep.					
	@ fall			d felt			
6		er ill when he					
_		<b>b</b> was seeming		d had	seemed		
6		urists Egypt in		_			
	are visiting	<b>b</b> visited	© will visit	d have	visited		
V	I lunch at ho	me yesterday.  b hasn't					
4	a haven't	<b>b</b> hasn't	© didn't have	<b>d</b> hadr	14		
8	He playing to	ootball. He was fond c	of football.				
4		<b>b</b> is used to			used		
Q		, he to hospita					
44		<b>b</b> had taken		d was	taken		
UU		oo high. Of course An					
44		<b>b</b> had watched		d was	watching		
UU	While she was cook	ing, her sister	. homework.				
44	(a) was doing	<b>b</b> did	© does	d) had	done		
U		two mistakes in n			_		
46		<b>b</b> have done	© ala	<b>d</b> mad	e		
UE	How long di		@ eimee	A aver			
44	(a) for		© since	d ever			
WW.	I waved to Aya, but	<b>b</b> was looking	© hadn't looked	d look	ad		
16	a car when	you were living in Par	ic?	G TOOK	Su		
AA	Mad you	<b>b</b> Were you having	C Have you had	(d) Did	vou have		
		<b>9</b> 11010 700 11011119	9 11410 700 1144		,		
46			A				
16		der brother finished s					
		when your father arri					
	· =	street when I was you	ing but now I				
19	Soha started school	I two months					
20	Have you seen Ola?	- Yes, Iher ar	nhour ago.				
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:	9 - 9 - 9				
		vhile my mobile phone		[			
		night or did you busy?		[			
		to Cairo? - Yes, I have					
		k yesterday. You were					
25	€ We were good friends. We were knowing each other well.  [						





Mark



Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d: What ..... when you were in the garden? © are vou doing (a) you were doing (b) were you doing d have you done I had to take a taxi because my car..... (b) was mendina © was being mended @ mended (a) mending the film, Mahmoud fell asleep because it was a boring film. **(b)** When © On **d** During (a) While Mazen..... chess all day yesterday. **(b)** was playing © is playing (a) played d had played When the phone rang, I..... my lunch. (b) am havina © was having d will have (a) had While the party....., we were busy sending invitations to our friends. (a) was prepared (b) was been prepared (c) was being prepared (d) is prepared As I..... home last night, it started raining. **(b)** had walked © was walking d walked (a) has walked While Basant was studying her lesson, her young brother..... T.V. © is watching (a) was watchina **(b)** watches (d) watched From 7 to 9 yesterday, I..... a certain task as I was asked. (b) had done © was doing d have done a did **10** Where .....? (a) was written the book **b** was the book written (c) the book was written d the book was writing **10** The thief ..... and sent to prison. (a) was arrested (b) arrested © was arresting d has arrested **1** Before joining the university, I ...... living away from my family. © used to d wasn't used to (b) didn't use to (a) used **16** My grandparents ..... farmers for 40 years. **(b)** had been d has **14** What games did you ..... play when you were at school? **(b)** was used © is used to d use to a used to When he was in Cairo, he always..... along the Nile. **b** was walking © walks d 'll walk (a) walked Fill in gap: 16 .....the party, I met an old friend. While I ...... ill, I lost a lot of weight and became so thin. Once, We ...... lunch in this restaurant. Really, they visited the zoo five years ...... vour office cleaned yesterday? Find the mistake, then correct it: On the flight, I was reading a book called "Giants' Grammar." [.....] 1 helped my mother while she was cooking. While he was playing football, he fall and the broke his leg. **Q** I'd rather they come to the party early. **Q** It was cold, so he shuts the window.



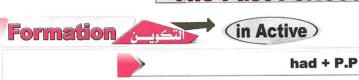
## **Giants' Gram**

# Mark Advanced Exercises

- Airmai				
		ct answer from a, b, c o		
1	They didn't answer	the ringing phone sin	ce they deeply	/.
	(a) sleep	<b>(b)</b> were sleeping	© are sleeping	d has slept
2	I to prepari	ng my meals when I st	arted to live away from	m my family.
	(a) used	(b) got used	© get used	d become used
3	He doesn't stay up	<b>(b) got used</b> late any longer. This n	neans he	9
	a used to stay up l	ate	(b) didn't use to stay u	ip late
	© usually stays up I	ate	b didn't use to stay ud is in the habit of st	tavina un late
		the money he needed		.c.,g op ia.e
	(a) gave	<b>b</b> didn't give	© give	d was given
6	While my car	at the garage, I was	having a meal at a ne	earby restaurant
	was repairing	<b>b</b> was being repaire	ed Chad renaired	d rengired
6	I no longer work in	Saudi Arabia. I	there for ten years	d) repaired
•	(a) had worked	<b>b</b> work	Chave worked	d worked
П	Rawan used to be I	azy, but now she	Chave worked	Worked
4	a does no longer	<b>b</b> is no longer	© no longer dees	a no longer is
8	Amr for oig	ht hours every day las	t work	o no longer is
4	Ann	<b>b</b> worked	bes worked	
0	He fat but n	b worked	C nas worked	<b>d</b> works
A	@ used to be	<b>b</b> didn't use to be	(a) is used to being	Chien't wood to being
40	"I used to smoke "	b didiri use to be	C is used to being	a isn't used to being
				A 1111 -4 14
99	It is time they	<b>b</b> I no longer do it	C) I SMOKE	(a) I'll STOP IT
UU	R as	home from school.	wonder what has del	ayed them.
	@ go	<b>b</b> have gone	C went	a are going
<b>U</b> G	a used to leve	that I I now ha		Owne lawed
16	Ahmed to s	<b>b</b> love	© am used to loving	d was loved
<b>YY</b>	Allilled to s	has gone	© has been	(A) have left
10	viciting box	b lids golle	a ticket for the beauty	d nas ien
W	(a) During	<b>(b)</b> has gone urs, we got an entranc	© After	al to see my uncle. <b>(d) While</b>
		<b>ⓑ On</b> school, I saw some stud		
WG.	A walking	Chooi, i saw some stu		Cely.
-	***************************************	<b>b</b> walks	Cilly walk	was walking
	Fill in gap:			
16	in the office	e, he received a call fr	om his wife.	
17	the race, s	he fell fainted and lost	her national record.	
		ts while in Lux		
		chool, suddenly an ear		
	I'd rather you		inquant took place.	
99				
	Find the mistake,			
		n Banha, I met an old f		[]
		e discussing the new p		d time as well.[]
		v friends when his stay		[]
		dn't hear the doorbell.		[]
25	She dave an award	for her bravery during	n the fire	Γ 1



## زمن الماضي التيام The Past Perfect Tense





- ✓ Aya didn't want to go to the cinema because she'd already seen the movie.
- ✓ I thought I'd done the right thing, but I realised that I'd made a big mistake.

## Formation (in Passive)



Object + had + been + P.P



✓ Dinner had been prepared by Jana when I came back.

Negative





► ✓ The man on the plane was very nervous because he'd never flown before.

**E** Question

🗐 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في الماضي التام من

? ..... P.P + الفاعل Had

√ Had Jana prepared dinner when you reached home?

- Yes, she had.

- No. she hadn't.

📋 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي التام من:

? ...... P.P + الفاعل had + اداة استفهام

√ What had you done before I came? ✓ I had called my relatives before you came.

**Key words** الكلمات الدالة

السفال

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي التام:

## O after (before that) - as soon as - when - because (as - since)





- ✓ After he had read the novel, he watched TV.
- ✓ After reading the novel, he watched TV.
- ✓ As soon as he had eaten his meal, he drank tea.
- ✓ I slept before that I had studied English.
- ✓ I didn't swim because I had forgotten my suit.
- ✓ She didn't buy anything as (since) the shop had been closed.
- ✓ When I had arrived at the station, the train left.

عدم وجود رابط Having + P.P Having read the novel, he watched TV.







#### 9 before (after that) - by the time - when



- ✓ Before he watched TV, he had read the novel.
- ✓ Before watching TV, he had read the novel.
- ✓ I had studied English after that I slept.
- ✓ By the time I arrived, the thief had escaped.
- ✓ When we arrived at the cinema, the film had already started.



- √ He didn't park his car until he had found a place.
- ✓ She never watched TV till she had finished all work.

#### عام سابق + already / just / never / yet / ...before. / by

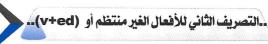
- ✓ When we arrived, the film had already started.
- ✓ She had just got home when I phoned her.
- ✓ By 2018, I had finished all my studies.
- ✓ He told me he had already done his homework.
- √ They had never come late before.











- ✓ They had no sooner finished painting our new house than we moved into it.
- √ No sooner had they finished painting our new house than we moved into it.
- ✓ They had hardly finished painting our new house when we moved into it.
- ✓ Scarcely had they finished painting our new house when we moved into it.



- √ It was only when I had done my homework that I went to bed.
- ✓ It was not until I had done my homework that I went to bed.



#### **Usage**

الاستخدام

- ◘ يستخدم الماضي التام في ترتيب الأحداث فيكون الحدث الأول ماضي تام و الثاني ماضي بسيط
- ✓ I travelled but before that I had locked my flat.
- ✓ After she had cooked, she set the table. ✓ Before I came, I had called her.
  - يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي
- √ Before Jana had lunch, she had set the table.
- ✓ I had done my work by the time I went out.
  - 🕡 يستخدم الماضي التام إذا أردنا التحدث عن الأشياء التي حدثت قبل هذا الوقت
- ✓ When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.

# زمن الماضي التام المستمر The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

## (in Active) Formation ____ had been + V + ing When the boys came into the house, their clothes were dirty and one of them had a black eve. They'd been fighting. I was very tired when I got home. I'd been working hard all day. Formation ( ) (in Passive) Object + had + been + P.P ✓ Dinner had been prepared by Jana when I came back. **Negative** ( 3:11 hadn't been + V + ing When I went to Madrid, I stayed with a friend of mine. She hadn't been living there very long, but she knew the city very well. Question (I) أ يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في الماضي التام المستمر من [ # been + V + ing ......? Had Jana been watching TV all night? - No. she hadn't. - Yes, she had. 🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي التام المستمر من: ?...... been + V + ing + الفاعل had + الاة استفهام √ What had you been doing all night? ✓ I had been revising all my lessons all night. Key words [all, for, since] بعض كلمات الماضي التام و أكثر استخدامنا لهذا الزمن يكون مع

an hour.

all day.

since

**How long** 

for

all

► How long had you been waiting before Ali came?

He was always busy. He had been travelling since 2010.

> When I met him I knew that he had been waiting for more than

اطوال I was very tired when I arrived home. I'd been working hard



## Alants' Arammar





- يستخدم الماض التام الستمر للتعبير عن استمرار فعل حتى وقت معين في ماضي
- √ When I got there, they had already been playing for about an hour.
- ✓ She had been sleeping soundly for many hours before her husband arrived.
  - يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن شيء يحدث في فترة زمنية قبل حدوث شيء اخر
- ✓ We'd been playing tennis for about half an hour when it started to rain heavily.
- ✓ All went to the doctor last Friday. He hadn't been feeling well for some time.

## الفرق بين الماضي التام اليسيط والماضي التام المستمر

أ يستخدم الماضي التام البسيطُ للتُغبير عن ترتيب احداث في الماضي أما الماضي التام المسـتمر يُغبـر عـن اسـتمرار حـدث في الماضي لفترة معينة

## وهناك حالات لا نستخدم فيها الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم بدلاً منها الماضي التام:

- هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة الستمرة عموماً و هي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و المعرفة.
- √ We were good friends. We had known each other for 10 years.
- √ I was surprised when she cut her hair. She'd had long hair since I first met her.
  - @إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر بل نستخدم الماضي التام ( لأن الحدث على فترات متقاطعة):
- ✓ Ahmed had finished typing three reports all night. (had been finishing x)
- √ She had drunk five cups of tea when I was in my office. (had been drinking x)
  - @ الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية) لا تأتى في الاستمرارية مثل

#### (break down / stop / close / open / end / finish...)

✓ She was late for the meeting as her car had broken down.

#### Compare

Present perfect continuous (I have been -ing)



- ✓ I hope the bus comes soon. I've been waiting for 20 minutes. (before now)
- ✓ James is out of breath. He has been running.

Past perfect continuous (I had been -ing)



- ✓ At last the bus came. I'd been waiting for 20 minutes (before the bus came)
- ✓ James was out of breath. He had been running.

#### Compare

#### was - ing (past continuous) and had been -ing:

- √ It wasn't raining when we went out. The sun was shining. But it had been raining, so the ground was wet.
- √ Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because she'd been working very hard.



الرابط الزمني when في الماضي

	ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I arrived at the station, the train had left.
When	ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام +	▶ When I had arrived at the station, the train left.
wnen	ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I arrived, the train left.
	ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I fell, I was playing football.



الاحظ الفرق بن:

in - by - until - since					
in	ماضي بسيط سنة ماضية +	▶ In 2000, I studied English.			
in	مستقبل بسيط سنة مستقبلية +	▶ In 2025, I will study English.			
by	ماضي تام, سنة ماضية +	▶ By 2000, I had studied English.			
by	مستقبل تام, سنة مستقبلية +	▶ By 2025, I will have finished my studies.			
until	ماضي تام سنة ماضية +	▶ Until 2000, I hadn't studied English.			
since	مضارع تام سنة ماضية +	▶ Since 2000, I have studied English.			

🕜 في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (after - before - while - until - since) يأتي بعدهم

- √ Toka had slept most of the way since leaving Alex.
- ✓ I had done my homework before watching TV.
- ✓ After doing his homework, he watched TV.

المط أشكال الماضي البسيط مع:

	· Sur - war , A A	
+ didn't + inf.	until - till	
صفة / ظرف / اسم + wasn't / weren't + الفاعل	until - till	The second secon
+ wasn't / weren't + P.P ( <mark>Passive</mark> )	until - till	had + P.P فاعل
+ wouldn't + inf.	until - till	
التصريف الثاني للفعل + No one	until - till	

- √ I didn't leave home until my mother had come.
- √ He wasn't sad until he had met his wife.
- ✓ I wasn't promoted until I had increased my target.
- ✓ I wouldn't leave the office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.
- √ No one left the office until they had finished all tasks.
  - 🗂 للحظ اننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل till until:
- ✓ I waited in the park until I found a vacant place.
  - يمكن استبدال الماضي التام بالماضي البسيط وهذا يعني أنه لا يوجد فاصل زمني كبير بين الحدثين:
- ✓ After I did my homework, I slept. I called him before he entered.
  - لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر و الماضي التام المستمر:
- ✓ I was doing my homework all day yesterday.
- √ I had been doing my homework all day yesterday before I slept.
  - ◊ لاحظ استخدام because في المثلة التالية:
- √ I didn't swim because I had forgotten my swimming suit.
- √ I felt very tired because I had been working all day.
- ◊ لابد من مراعاه تسلسل الازمنة
- I went home and discovered that the thief had stolen my money.

لاحظ ان السرقة اول حدث في الجملة لذا يوضع في الماضي التام

يمكننا القول ان غالبا ما يكون الحدث بعد الافعال التالية في زمن الماضي التام

discovered - realised - remembered - found out....

Having + P.P Having been + P.P (Passive) لاحظ الاختلاف بين

- Having done his homework, he watched TV.
- Haven't been rewarded, Ali continued working hard.









	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
1	When I rang, he						
	(a) has already left	<b>b</b> left	© had already left	d is already left			
2	He loved the zoo. He	e wild animals	s before.				
	a had never seen	<b>b</b> has never seen	© never saw	d is never seen			
3	Her eyes were red.	She					
	a has been crying	<b>b</b> had been crying	© was crying	d is been crying			
4	She found that the o	old man					
_		<b>b</b> had already left	© had already leave	d has already leave			
E	Ali went out after he	ehis lunch.					
_	@ eats	<b>b</b> has eaten	© have eaten	d had eaten			
6		ork before the	office.				
	@ left			<b>d</b> leaving			
7	-	riend again.		_			
_		<b>b</b> has got married		d had got marry			
8		/. She it for ag					
		<b>b</b> hasn't cleaned		d hasn't clean			
9		pub was no longer op					
44		<b>b</b> has close		d had closed			
		e me. I quite a					
44	_	<b>b</b> have changed	_	d had change			
UU		y the house and a car					
44		<b>b</b> had stopped		d has stop			
UZ		quiet. Everybody					
44		<b>b</b> is going		d was going			
a		longer there. They					
44		<b>b</b> have left	(c) had leave	d had left			
UC	I couldn't catch the			(A) Is well all the make			
46		<b>b</b> already left		a nas iem aiready			
UE		at he abroad y		A been't travelling			
10000		<b>b</b> hasn't been travell	lea C naant travelea	d nashr travelling			
	Fill in gap:						
16	We leave the	e place until he had co	ome.				
17	Hardly had he taker	n the medicine	. he recovered.				
18	16 Having the ticket, he took the train.						
19	16got his degree, he worked as an engineer.						
	20 No sooner he stepped on my foot than he apologized to me.						
THE REAL PROPERTY.	Find the mistake, then correct it:						
			b				
		eports, he made for th		[			
		p after he had have a	_	[			
44	When she arrived most of her friends leaves.  By 2019, I have finished studying English.						
				[			
46	They didn't come. They have arranged something else.						





-								
_	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:							
1	She was afraid because she before.							
		<b>b</b> didn't fly		d don't fly				
How many times him before you moved here?								
_	@ you met	b did you meet	© you had met	d had you met				
3	Jana didn't want to	go to the cinema with	us because she	the movie.				
		<b>b</b> 's already seen						
4		e message to her fath						
_		<b>b</b> writing		d had written				
E		ont gate, I drove away						
4	@ locked	_	© being locked					
6		new job when he deci						
4		<b>b</b> was he found		d had he found				
V		until Samy had throw						
A		<b>b</b> wasn't destroyed		d was destroyed				
8		coffee before l						
4		<b>b</b> had you drunk						
9	No sooner t	he poisoned cakes the	an he lost consciousn					
44		<b>b</b> he ate		d does he eat				
10		the country until he ha						
44		<b>b</b> wasn't allowed		d allowed				
UU		on by the time the mee						
44		<b>b</b> had been agreed		d agreed				
12		captured than he esca		_				
AA		<b>b</b> he had been	© he had	d had he been				
(E	Never before							
44		<b>b</b> she had faced	© did she face	d had she faced				
14		I him before.	_					
44		<b>b</b> have never seen		d have never saw				
UE		unning his shop. He						
inius.	(a) had sold	<b>b</b> has sell	© had sell	d has sold				
37	Fill in gap:							
16	My brother said tha	at he had been to Fran	ce and the Ei	ffel Tower.				
17	Ituntil she I	had got permission the	at she left.					
				n hurried to help him.				
	Before for London, he had paid off his debts.  He'd come into the room when he died.							
	***************************************		aleu.					
44	Anmed had been fir	nishing typing three re	ports all night.	[]				
	On finished my work		: _1 :1	[]				
90	Aiter the nouse had	painted, we furnished	a it.	[]				
66	He didn't sad until h	ie nad met nis wite. Ids. Wo had boon know	wing agab ather for 40	[]				



# Advanced Exercises المحالة Advanced Exercises

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
_		for 6 months before w		tolen			
2	repaired. th	<b>b</b> had been owning the car looked a new or	ne.				
		<b>b</b> Having been					
3	Bv 2017. I th	rree European countr	ries.				
( <del>-</del>	. <del></del>	<b>b</b> had visited		d was visiting			
4		, so it wasn't					
		<b>b</b> before					
		last night, we found th					
		<b>b</b> was breaking					
6	I was very tired whe	en I got home. I	hard all day.	6			
	(a) had been working	b had worked	© worked	d has been working			
7		here, I realised that I					
		<b>b</b> had arrived		<b>d</b> arrive			
		film I didn't wa					
	(a) has finished	<b>b</b> finishes	© was finishing	d had finished			
9	I didn't buy the mob	ile the shop h	ad been close.				
	@ until	<b>b</b> since	© before	d after			
10	There were three ci	nemas. They	another one.				
	a have opened	<b>b</b> have open he letter was unreada	© had opened	d had open			
		<b>b</b> Having written		n <b>d</b> Had written			
		of the crime soon after					
		<b>b</b> informed		d were informed			
13		we visited the					
AA		<b>b</b> have never					
		ed him for three hours					
	(a) released	<b>b</b> had released	c being released	(d) releasing			
UE	I noticed that he	anything all ever	ning.				
		<b>b</b> hasn't said	© hadn't said	@ naant tola			
	Fill in gap:						
	_	/ car he had so					
17	When they arrived,	the film alread	dy begun.				
18	He was punished fo	r what he don	e.				
19	The criminal	. put in prison until he	had confessed all his	s crimes.			
20	After my lun	ch, I like having some	sleep.				
esessa.	Find the mistake,		THE				
		ause she had ever flow	wn before	[			
44		ause she had ever how ed the U.S. before you		[			
	We didn't move into our house since the workers had finished painting it. [ He was annoyed. He had been phoned her all evening.						
		mework was marked		[			







will / shall + inf.	b 61 1 *** A1
2 (am - is - are) + going to + inf.	الستقبل البسيط
3 (am - is - are) + v +ing	المضارع المستمر
(V or V+s) التصريف الأول للفعل	المضارع البسيط
5 will be +ing	المستقبل المستمر
6 will have + P.P	المستقبل التام

### will / shall + inf.

Affirmation	
الإثبات	

Negative النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول will / shall + inf.

تأتي shall عن ا

will / shall + الفاعل + inf.

will / shall bet P.P.

won't / shan't + inf.

We will study English tomorrow.

I shall build a new house next year.

We won't study English tomorrow.

>> I shan't build a new house next year. ♦ Will you study English tomorrow?

Yes, we will. No, we wont. ▶ What will you do tomorrow?

**↑▶** English will be studied tomorrow by us.

A new house will be built next year.

## **Key words**

#### الكلمات الدالة

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المستقبل البسيط وللحظ أنهم يأتوا أول الجملة وأخرها مثل:

tomorrow	غدا	-	I hope it won't rain tomorrow.
مدة زمنية + next	القادم	•	Next week, we shall visit the museum.
in the future			I will travel abroad in the future.
soon	قريبا	•	They will soon speak English well.
shortly	قريبا	•	Excuse me a moment, I'll be with you shortly.
in a few (month	s - weeks -		I will visit my uncle in a few days.
days - hours - min	utes)		She will finish her study in a few months

## EMMESTINES!

_		
0	تنبؤات بدون دليل	▶ I expect Toka and Jana will stay for lunch.
2	حقائق مستقبلية (العمر)	▶ Next year, I will be 20 years old.
3	القرارات السريعة	Mona has just decided that she will leave.
4	العرض	▶ That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
6	الوعد	▶ I promise I'll buy you a mobile phone.
6		▶ Will you shut the window?
7	للتهديد	▶ Be careful or you will hurt yourself
8	للتحذير بتهديد	▶ Be quiet or I will punish you.
	مع بعض الكلمات مثل	I hope I will see him tomorrow.
9	think, believe, expect,	I expect he will win the race.
	predict, hope, promise,	I promise I will visit you tomorrow.
	sure, certainly, probably.	▶ I think it will rain.

الأولى unless ـ if في الجمل البسيط مع الجمل الشرطية

√ If I drop this glass, it will break. √ Unless he studies hard, he will fail.

@يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الروابط في ازمنة المضارع (...after - before - when - until - as soon as...)





- √ After I (do) have done my homework, I'll go to bed.
- ✓ As soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London, she will call me.

have I has + P.F

- ✓ Before he types the reports, he will have dinner.
- √ When it gets warmer, the snow will start to melt.



- ✓ He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.
- ✓ I won't leave until I write (have written) this report.

الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل لذا يأتي معها will

√ My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.



**Affirmation** الإثنات

> **Negative** النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول

(am - is - are) + going ♦ She is going to study French as planned.

They are going to visit Cairo.

(am not - isn't - aren't) *> She isn't going to study French as planned.

They aren't going to visit Cairo. + going to + inf.

(Am - Is - Are) + الفاعل → Is she going to study French as planned? No. she isn't.

Yes, she is. + going to + inf. (am - is - are) + going to > French is going to be studied as planned.

Cairo is going to be visited.

(Christoff Chair

	تنبؤات مع وجود دليل	▶ Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.
0		▶ He can't swim. He is going to drown.
		I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.
	الخطط الستقبلية	▶ Toka is going to play. She has planned that.
2	(plan . made a plan)	▶ I have a plan. I am going to start my project.
	النوايا	▶ He is going to visit London. He has intended that.
3	(intend - intention)	▶ We are going to visit Cairo. We have intention.
	القرارات المسبقة	They have decided they are going to study.
4	(decide- make a decision	▶ She has made up her mind. She is going to leave.
	- made up mind)	▶ I've made my decision. I am going to travel abroad.
5	أشياء على وشك الحدوث	▶ Watch out! You're going to fall.
		▶ Be careful! You are going to break it.



## Compare

- "Ali phoned while you were out." "OK. I'll call him back."
  - "Ali phoned while you were out." "Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back."
- ✓ "Mai is in hospital." "Oh really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her."
  - "Mai is in hospital." "Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening."

€ لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات الدالة على Will إذا جاء دليل نستخدم be going to

think - believe - sure

- I think it will rain
- ✓ It is cloudy. I think it is going to rain. لاحظ الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل اما الصفات المؤقتة تعتبر دليل
- ✓ My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.
- √ I am very ill so I am going to see a doctor.

## (am - is - are) + V + ing

**Affirmation** اللثبات

**Negative** النفى

Question السؤال

**Passive** المىنى للمجهول

+ V+ing

(am - is - are) + الفاعل

- She is studying French as arranged. (am - is - are) + V + ing They are cooking meals as prepared.
- (am not isn't aren't) * She isn't studying French as arranged.
  - They aren't cooking meals as prepared.
  - † Is she studying French as arranged? Yes, she is. No. she isn't.
- (am is are) + being * French is being studied as arranged. Meals are being cooked as prepared.
- My Constant of the Control of the Co

	للأحداث المرتب لها مع الكلمات
	(arranged, booked,
1	bought, made
	arrangements, prepare,
	all is okay)
	الناسبات الاجتماعية والأنشطة الرسمية

- 3

- ▶ He is visiting his uncle. He has arranged.
- ▶ He is catching the 3 o'clock train. He has made arrangements.
- I am having dinner with Toka. I have booked a table.
- ▶ He's getting married next Friday.
- . The school inspector is coming on Thursday ♦ من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد / سفر / زيــارات /
  - Dur school is taking part in a competition next week. ▶
- ا عدم مقدره فعل شيء في الستقبل نتيجـة 🕨 I can't meet you tomorrow as I am doing the shopping. She can't call you tonight as she is visiting her uncle. ♦ الترتيب لفعل حدث آخر

## Present Simple (inf. or inf. + s)

**Affirmation** الإثنات

**Negative** النفي Question

السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول

- (V or V+s) التصريف الأول للفعل
- The English class storts at 7.
- My train arrives at 7 tomorrow.
- (doesn't don't) + inf.
- My train doesn't arrive at 7 tomorrow The English class never starts at 7.
- (Does Do) + الفاعل + inf. Does the train arrive at 7 o' clock? Yes, it does. No. it doesn't.
  - (is are) + P.P
- French is studied at 7 o' clock.
- Meals are cooked every day.





حدث في المستقبل طبقاً لجدول أو تقويم (مواصلات / فتح وغلة / بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسرح)

- The train leaves at 7:30 a.m.
- The plane takes off at 9 a.m.
- ▶ Our lesson starts at 12 p.m.

### will be + V + ing

**Affirmation** الاثنات

> **Negative** النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمحمول

**Key words** الكلمات الدالة will be + V + ing

will be + P.P

- She will be studying French at 7 tomorrow.
- They will be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
- She won't be studying French at 7 tomorrow.
- won't be + V + ing They won't be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
- will الفاعل be + V + ↑> Will she be studying French at 7 tomorrow? No. she won't. Yes, she will. ina
  - French will be studied at 7 tomorrow.
  - Meals will be cooked from 8 to 9 tomorrow.

at......tomorrow.......from ...... to This time next.... at next....

between.....and ... tomorrow morning.....

8

## Marie Marie

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في نقطة معينة في الستقيل.

- ▶ At 10 tomorrow, he will be in his office, he will be working.
- This time tomorrow I will be sitting in the cinema. I will be watching a movie.
- ▶ At this time tomorrow, the engine will be repaired. ▶ In the future. I'll be playing tennis from 7 to 9 p.m. 2
  - Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be having dinner. للحديث عن ما تم ترتيبها وتخطيطها في الستقبل.

At 9.30 next Tuesday, we will be attending her wedding party.

## Compare

#### will be - ing with other continuous forms:

- ✓ At 10 o'clock yesterday, Sally was in her office. She was working. (past)
- ✓ It's 10 o'clock now. She is in her office. She is working. (present)
- √ At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working. (future)

#### will have + P.P.

**Affirmation** الاثنات

> **Negative** النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول will have + P.P

won't have + P.P

By next year, I will have finished my studies. ♦ She will have studied French by 7 tomorrow.

♦ By next year, I won't have finished my studies.

**♦▶** She won't have studied French by 7 tomorrow.

will have + P.P Will you have finished your studies by next year?

Yes, I will.

No, I won't.

♦ By next year, my studies will have been finished. French will have been studied by 7 tomorrow.



Key words الكلمات الدالة by (-سنة قادمة - next..... - tomorrow - سنة قادمة - next.....

by the time

in..... = بحلول ...by في خلال فترة زمنية

This time tomorrow...

in (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes') time

# Uses Chiling

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف ينتهي في وقت معين في الستقبل.

- By the end of this year, I will have finished my study.
- ▶ His new house will have been built by 2030.
- ▶ Before our parents come, we will have tidied our room.
- ا الستقبل. ♦ In five years, a lot of books will have been published.

## Compare

2

#### will have (done) with other perfect forms:

بستخدم للتعبر عن حدث سوف بكون قيد انتهى أو تم

- ✓ Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years. (present perfect)
- √ Next year they will have been married for 25 years. (future perfect)
- √ When their son was born, they had been married for three years. (past perfect)



## ممكن تحاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاحتيار

- ◀ After Ali (had finished has finished) his work, he will call us.
- She won't leave until she (has had had had has been) her money.
- € It is cloudy. I think (will is going to) rain.
- It is cloudy. I (won't am not going to) go out.
- The shop (will be opening opens) from 9 until 6 tomorrow.
- I think our lesson (starts will start) at 6 o'clock.
- ¶ She is very clever. She (will is going to) get full marks.
- He is very tired. He (will is going to) see a doctor.
- The President (will visit is going to visit is visiting) Aswan tomorrow.
- 10 I expect we (shall are going to) win the cup.
- **11** After (has call had called calling) her, I will tell you what happens.
- 12 This novel (will be published will publish will be come out) soon.
- I have just decided that I (am going to will) buy this dress.
- The water is boiling. I (will am going to) turn off the cooker.
- 16 I can't meet you tomorrow as I (will revise will be revising) my lessons.

Wise S

There is no way to happiness.

Happiness is the way



# Mark المجالة Elementary Exercises

named *			***************************************	
	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	Look, this glass is c	racked It		
_		<b>b</b> is breaking		d will be breaking
2		seven every evening.		
4	will begin	<b>b</b> is going to begin	© begins	d is beginning
3		g. It bite you.		
4	(a) is	<b>b</b> will	© is going to	d is being
4		16 on Saturda		
a	a am being	<b>b</b> is going to be	© will be	d am
6	I there for ye		0 1111	<b>A</b>
a	am being	<b>b</b> am going to be	© will have been	d will be
U	me a favour			
6	Mother than	Are you doing	(C) Do you do	d Are you going to do
U	wother the	house work between	o a.m. and 2 p.m. tor	norrow.
Ω	Lexport they	<b>b</b> will have done the match tomorrow	will be doing	will be
•				
Q	We studying	<b>ⓑ</b> will win g this book by the end	of this year	a dre going to win
4	@ finish	<b>b</b> will be finishing	will have finished	d are finishing
10	I think it hot		will flave fiffished	die iiiisiiiig
		<b>b</b> will have been	© is going to be	d is being
10		v. I a shower.	o to going to be	a is somig
		<b>b</b> will have had	© will have	d am having
12		vy. I you to ca		
		<b>b</b> am helping		d will help
13		rrow, I on a tr		
		<b>b</b> will have travelled		d will be travelling
14		ht, I all my hor		
	(a) will finish	<b>b</b> is going to finish	© will be finishing	<b>d</b> will have finished
ae	I with my co	usins in Tanta as plan	ned.	O
20000057		<b>b</b> am going to stay	© will be staying	d will stay
	Fill in gap:			
16	Our team trains har	d, I think they	win the match.	
		ive. He finish t		
		tomorrowbe S	Saturday.	
	Amal anothe			
44		oudly, his mother	feed him right nov	<b>N.</b>
	Find the mistake, t			
		she will have been fini		[]
		rrow, she will travelling	ng on a train to Alex.	[]
	Watch out! The car			[]
		of our work will do by I		[]
UE	Our school takes pa	art in the sports comp	etition next week.	



# Intermediate Exercises Mark علي المسلم 25

	> Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:			
1	They a new factory in this area by the end of 2030.					
		<b>b</b> will be building		d are building		
		k she the full				
		<b>b</b> will have got		d will be getting		
		ment. I my ho				
	(a) do		© am doing	d have done		
4	I won't be able to tal	lk to you all the day to	morrow because I	my homework.		
		<b>b</b> will have done				
		I at university				
		<b>b</b> will be studied		d will have studied		
		or on Thursday		_		
_	will come	<b>b</b> is coming	© is going to come	d comes		
V	l've enrolled on an E	English course. It	on Sunday of next	t week.		
4	(a) will start	<b>b</b> is starting	© is going to start	d starts		
		nouse work between				
		<b>b</b> will have done		d will be		
		oaid jobs avail				
-		<b>b</b> will have been		d were being		
		it's only 7 a.m. It				
		<b>b</b> is going to be		d will be being		
		dstorm. I the v		<b>A</b> 211 1		
		<b>b</b> am going to close		d will close		
		ets. They to E		A will be flying		
		<b>b</b> will fly				
		k fair to buy the books				
-	_	am going to go		a will go		
UG	By next month, my	elder brother  (b) is going to marry	or to years.	ill have been married		
46			C will marry w	III Have been married		
<b>UC</b>	If you like, I	The salad.	@ am going to make	(d) makes		
	MARAMATAN TEAT AND THE TOTAL TOTAL TOTAL TEAT AND THE TEAT AND THE TOTAL TEAT AND THE TOTAL TEAT AND THE TOTAL TEAT AND THE TOTAL TEAT AND THE TOT	<b>b</b> will make	Call going to make	Williames		
	Fill in gap:					
	What time					
-						
			what off at 7 a m	2		
QU		don next week, her flig	JIII OII at 7 a.ii	11.		
	Find the mistake,					
	I would be 18 next M					
According to the timetable, the next bus will move at 10 a.m.						
	The cup is on the edge of the table. It will fall.					
	It is very hot in the house. I am going to turn on the air conditioner. [					
40	Don't be late. The b	us ieave at exactiv tel	I U CIUCK!			



# Mark فير نفسك Advanced Exercises

		***************************************				
	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1	I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I be sick.					
	(a) should (b) am going to		d will			
2	Her wedding party held next Sun					
	(a) is being (b) will be	© is going to be	d will have			
3	I've bought a new suit. I it at the p	arty tonight				
	a am going to wear b would wear		d am wearing			
4	Toka married next June. All is we		an wearing			
•	(a) gets (b) is getting		d will get			
E	She tomorrow evening. She has		will ger			
4	(a) is leaving (b) leave	packed her bags.	(d) house left			
G			d have left			
4	Scientists say that by 2020, the glaciers i	n wontana				
6	(a) are melting (b) will have melted	© men	d have melted			
Y	Sorry, I can't come because I ten	inis with Yenia tomorr	ow.			
6	am going to play b will have played	© will play	d) am playing			
O	By 2025, the ICDL certificate by I					
	© earned	<b>b</b> will have been ear	ned			
	© have earned	d will have earned				
e	They've got the tickets; they to Lo	ondon.				
44	(a) will have flown (b) are going to fly	© are flying	d will fly			
10	I can't meet you tonight as I for the	ne exam.				
	a going to revise b will have been revised will revise a marevising					
10	My brother is intelligent. He the maths exam easily.					
	(a) will pass (b) is going to pass		d going to pass			
12	I didn't charge my mobile phone. The bat	terv out.				
	(a) will run (b) shall run	© is going to run	d runs			
13	This old-aged tree isn't safe to sit under.	lt at any time.				
	(a) will fall (b) is falling	© is going to fall	d falls			
14	A: We have not got any sugar. B: I know,	Some this eve				
	(a) will buy (b) am going to buy					
16	I Ali tomorrow morning. He acce	nted my invitation and	booked a flight			
44	(a) will meet (b) am meeting	© am going to meet	d most			
		C dill going to meet	W IIICEI			
44	→ Fill in gap:					
10	The museum typically at 8 a.m.					
	My little grandchild be three next Friday.					
UE	The water is boiling. I turn the gas off.					
90	The next Olympic Games in Lond	on.				
20	A new bridge built here by the go	vernment by the end o	of this year.			
	Find the mistake, then correct it:					
21	The sky is too dark, I am not going to go f	or a walk.	[			
22	I am going out tomorrow. I haven't decide	ed vet.				
23	There's a train leaves at six o'clock tomor	row. I hope I will cate				
24	Ahmed has an appointment with a dentist	t. He will see doctor ne	ext Monday [ 1			
26	Watch out! You cut yourself.		[			
			[······			

108





#### 1) Present Passive Forms

Tense	Active թգու	ەخھول Passive
Present Simple المضارع البسيط	(v / v + s) ▶ Jana watches TV.	(am - is - are) + p.p.  TV is watched by Jana.
Present continuous المضارع المستمر	(am - is - are) + v + ing  ▶ Jana is watching TV.	(am - is - are) + being + p.p.  ▶ TV is being watched by Jana.
Present Perfect المضارع التام	(have - has) + p.p.  Jana has watched TV.	(have - has) + been + p.p.  TV has been watched by Jana.
Present Perfect continuous מלונع تام מעוتמر	(have - has) + been + v+ ing  ▶ Jana has been watching TV.	(have - has) + been + p.p.  ▶ TV has been watched by Jana.

#### 2) Future Passive Forms

Tense	Active թցեւ	مجمول Passive
Future Simple المستقبل البسيط	will + inf. ▶ Jana <mark>will watch</mark> TV.	will be + p.p.  TV will be watched by Jana.
Future continuous المستقبل المستمر	will be + v + ing  ▶ Jana will be watching TV.	will be + p.p.  TV will be watched by Jana.
Future Perfect المستقبل التام	will have + p.p  ▶ Jana will have watched TV.	will have been + p.p.  TV will have been watched by Jana.

#### 3) Past Passive Forms

Tense	Active poleo	ەجمور Passive
Past Simple	التصريف الثاني للفعل / v+ed	(was - were) + p.p.
الهاضي البسيط	▶ Jana watched TV.	▶ TV was watched by Jana.
Past continuous الماضى المستمر	(was - were) + v + ing ▶ Jana was watching TV.	(was - were) + being + p.p.  TV was being watched by Jana
Past Perfect	Attitude to had + p.p. America	had + been + p.p.
الماضي التام	▶ Jana had watched TV.	TV had been watched by Jana.
Past Perfect continuous	had + been + v+ ing	had + been + p.p.
الماضي التام المستمر	Jana had been watching TV.	TV had been watched by Jana.

#### 4) The Passive Infinitive

word	meaning	Active րցևո	Passive مجمول
must	يجب أن	must + inf.	must + be + p.p
need to	يحتاج أن	need to + inf.	need to + be + p.p
should / ought to	يجب أن	should / ought to + inf.	should / ought to + be + p.p
can / could	يستطيع / استطاع	can / could + inf.	can / could + be + p.p
may / might	ربما	may / might+ inf.	may / might + be + p.p
(am-is-are) going	سوف to	(am-is-are) going to+ inf.	(am-is-are) going to + be+ p.p
have to / has to	يجب أن	have to / has to + inf.	have to / has to + be + p.p
had to	كان يجب أن	had to + inf.	had to + be + p.p
will have to	سوف ينبغي أن	will have to + inf.	will have to + be+ p.p
am to / is to / are	يجب أن to	am to /is to/ are to + inf.	am to / is to / are to+ be+ p.p
was to / were to	كان يجب أن	was to/ were to + inf.	was to / were to + be + p.p
ر <b>to</b> اي فعل	أفعال بعدهاto والمصد	V + to+ inf.	V + to + be + p.p
be able to	قادر علي	be able to + inf.	be able to + be + p.p
be about to	يكون علي وشك	be about to + inf.	be about to + be + p.p
used to	اعتاد ان	used to + inf.	used to + be + p.p

# 5) Special cases

## أثرى معلوماتك

اللحظ طريقة تحويل الجمل الأتية إلى المبني للمجهول .	Í
الأفعال التي يليها مفعول ثم مصدر بدون to عند التحويل للمجهول نأتي ب to قبل المصدر	
الحظ طبيقة تحميل للحمل الآثية السيان المحميل	4

الدظ طريقة تحويل الجمل الأتية إلى المبني للمجمول.

Active • He will make us leave. Passive • We will be made to leave.

📑 للحظ الأفعال التي يليها مفعول ثم مصدر مع 🍵

Active	▶ He teaches them to write well.
Passive	They are taught to write well.
Active	▶ I'd like you to introduce me to the new manager.
Passive	▶ I'd like to be introduced to the new manager.

🗐 في حالة وجود فعل مضاف له (ing) نستخدم في المبني للمجهول (being + P.P )

Active	▶ I don't like people telling me what to do.
Passive	▶ I don't like being told what to do.
Active	▶ He went into the building without anyone seeing him.
Passive	▶ He went into the building without being seen (by anyone).

	الجملة الأمرية
	<b>Passive</b>

-	Let + Jցcáo + be + p.p		🧻 في الإثبات نستخدم:
		<ul><li>Open the door.</li><li>Let the door be opened.</li></ul>	The door should be opened.
	Don't let + Jցcáo + be + p.p		🗐 وفي النفي نستخدم:
	Active Passive	<ul><li>Don't open the door.</li><li>Don't let the door be opene</li></ul>	ed.



#### ملاحظات هامة على المبنى للمجمول

1et تحويلات البني للمجهول مع كلمة

- √ He let me answer the question.
  - $= let \rightarrow (be)$  allowed to +
- √ I was allowed to answer the question.
- ✓ He let people cheat him.
  - 🗐 للحظ في حالة وجود Let والفاعل هو نفسه المفعول نستخدم الشكل التالي:
  - (.be + p.p. + فاعل + be + p.p. + فاعل)
- √ He let himself be cheated.
- ن يمكن مع بعض الأفعال استبدال (be) ب (get) في زمن الجملة (
- ✓ The police arrested the thief.
- √ The thief (was / got) arrested by the police.
- ✓ She got divorced in 2015.

say - know

predict- allege

denv understand

suppose announce

People

- ✓ I will have answered the question. √ The question will have been answered.
- ✓ I will have to answer the question. √ The question will have to be answered.
  - 3 لاحظ التراكيب التالية ثعامل معاملة الفعل الناقص:

be going to / be allowed to / be supposed to / had better / would rather / be to / be about to

- ✓ I am going to answer the question. √ The question is going to be answered.
- √ The problem is about to be solved.

#### تحول التركسات الأتية في المبنى للمجهول كالأتي:

believe - think Subject + (v.be) + p.p + to + (inf) report - expect -

استخدام فاعل الحملة الثانية

المضارع

وضع it محل الفعول

@ لاحظ الفرق:

Subject + (v.be) + p.p + to have + p.p

It (is - was - has been - had been) + p.p that

الماضي استخدام مفعول الحملة الثانية

object + (v.be) + p.p + to + be + p.p

المضارع

object + (v.be) + p.p + to have been + p.p

الماضي

## ومين الجمليّ في المضارع

	Active	People expect that Ahmed will win the match.	
	Passive0	It is expected that Ahmed will win the match.	
Passive@		Ahmed is expected to win the match.	
	Passive®	▶ The match is expected to be won by Ahmed.	

رُمِينَ الْجِمَلَةُ فَى الْمَاضَى

Active	People said that Toka studied English.		
Passive 0	It was said that Toka studied English.		
Passive@	▶ Toka was said to have studied English.		
Passive@	▶ English was said to have been studied by Toka.		



# Hants' Grammar

شرطين لابد من توافرهم في الجملة المبنية للمجهول:

❶ لابد أن تحتوي الجملة على V.be وهم 8 تصريفات ويتم الاختياري ما بينهم طبقا للزمن.

(am - is - are - was - were - be - been - being)

- ◊ لابد أن نختار التصريف الثالث للفعل بإضافة ed أو حفظ الأفعال الشاذة.
- 🗐 كيف يمكننا معرفة أن الجملة مبنية للمجهول؟ ويوجد بعض الصيغ نعلم منها أن الجملة مبنية للمجهول



الفاعل by ...... مفعول غير عاقل to ..... to ...... مفعول عاقل that .....

هذا الجدول يساعد في التعامل مع سؤال اللختياري في أسئلة المبنى للمجهول

كلمات وروابط دالة علي الزمن	زمن الفعل	في المجهول <b>V.be</b> صيغة	التصريف الثالث
every - always - never - often	مضارع بسيط	(am - is - are)	
now - look - listen - at the moment	مضارع مستمر	(am - is - are) <u>being</u>	
for - since - just - already - yet - recently - never	مضارع تنام	(have - has) been	
yesterday ago - lastin + سنة سابقة	ماضي بسيط	was - were	
yesterday - while - as - just as - when	مأضي مستمر	(was - were) being	
after - as soon as - because - before - by the time no sooner - when	ماضي تام	had <u>been</u>	4
(will - would - can - could - shall -should - may - might - must - have to - has to)	الأفعال الناقصة	be + الفعل الناقص	
is to / are to / was to / were to.	be to	is to <u>be</u>	
أفعال يأتي بعدها to المصدر مثل promise - hope	V + to	V + to + <u>be</u>	
أفعال يأتي بعدها ing مثل admit - suggest	V + ing	V + <u>being</u>	
طبقاً لزمن الجملة الثانية.	It that	is - was - has been - had been - will be	

# tricks

# ممكن تحاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار

- A lot of cars (produced are produced) in Japan.
- ♠ A lot of cars (produced are produced) in Japan, are of a good quality.
- He could escape without (be seen seen being seen).
- 1 The thief was thought (to have killed to have been killed) the little boy.
- € The thief was supposed to (be arrested have been arrested) by the police.
- (Being arrested be arrested) by the police, the thief was sent to prison.
- When (done doing), our homework was corrected by my teacher.
- I'd like my new house ( to build to be built being built) in the city center.
- I borrowed my brother's car while I (was repairing my car was being repaired was having my car repaired) at the mechanic's.
- (Having arrested Having been arrested) by the police, the thief was taken to prison.







	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
1	Money to Egypt by the tourists.				
	(a) brings	<b>b</b> is bringing	© is brought	d are brought	
2	Nothing else	to stop the merchant	ts' fighting yesterday,	Unfortunately, one	
	of them was killed.				
	@ didn't do	<b>b</b> is done	© wasn't done	d was done	
3			Idwide, is an internat		
_	(a) is spoken	<b>b</b> spoken	© speaking	d to be spoken	
4	English all o	ver the world nowada	lys.		
_	(a) is spoken	<b>b</b> has spoken	© speaks	d is speaking	
E	In Egypt, electricity.	from the High	Dam.		
4			© is generated	d will be generated	
6	Since the bridge	, it will help the ti	raffic flow.	<b>a</b>	
_	@ was built	<b>b</b> has been built	© has built s branches in many o	d will be built	
V	This organization	in Egypt, but ha	s branches in many o	ther countries.	
A			© has based	(d) based	
8		cident took place on			
4	(a) reported	<b>b</b> reports	© had reported	d has been reported	
9		believed less			
44			© to have studied	d to study	
		nat on the tabl			
44		<b>b</b> was left	© were left	d is left	
UU	I hope this book			(A) book book formed	
46		<b>b</b> will be found	© were found	d had been found	
UZ	Scientific articles				
46	(d) be published	<b>b</b> are being publish	c are published	d have published	
UE	A woman's work		Quand	<b>A</b> wara	
44		<b>b</b> will		d were	
UC		ome, his lunch		d has been made	
46		<b>b</b> was being made	C nad made	d lias been liidae	
<b>U</b> E	The "Days"	by rana nussem.	© was writing	d had written	
		were written	G was writing	Willen	
	Fill in gap:				
	• Dec 20 (20) (30) (30) (30)	written last week.			
		stolen yesterd	ay?		
	Where thes				
	Children su				
20		amination, the patient	sent nome.		
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:			
-	THE CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY	e when he tells the tr		[]	
20	This story is knew to	o everybody as the na	me of the first space	pioneer. []	
	The thieves weren't	2 2		[]	
	Everything has don			[]	
20	English has spoken	all over the world			





Mark ئىسىن مىيق

25

	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	His wife is ill so their	r house every	day.	
	(a) isn't cleaned	<b>b</b> doesn't clean	©wasn't cleaned	d didn't clean
2	that Egypt is	s a great country.		
	a It is known	s a great country. <b>bit knows</b>	© It is knowing	d Egypt is known
3	I was advised	by a doctor, but it w	vas not possible.	
_	@ seeing	<b>b</b> to be seen	© to see	d being seen
4	Her book, s	so she is unable to do	my exercises.	
	@ was lost	<b>b</b> is losing	© has been lost	d has got lost
E		lo their best in case o		
4		<b>b</b> have asked	© asked	d are asking
6	The school rules			
	(a) have	<b>b</b> have been	© have to	d have to been
V	Not much ak	oout this complicated	subject.	_
4	(a) has known	<b>(b)</b> are being known	© is going to know	d is known
8	Nothing to s	ave the prisoner.	_ =	
		<b>b</b> done		d was doing
E		is competition at the v		
46	(d) was taking	<b>b</b> took	© was taken	d had taken
UU		ool, but at hor		
44	(a) was learnt	<b>b</b> was learning	(c) taught	d was taught
YY		which to him.		<b>(1)</b>
46	U sent	<b>b</b> was sending	© nas sent	d was sent
<b>U</b> C	a new nouse	as soon as the old on	ie sola.	A has been
10			©will be	
44	A lamous player	to be nurt after a	city centre road acci	A has bolioused
14			attract the world till n	
44			© were built	
16		out very sooi		W die boiii
-			c is found	d) will be found
	Fill in gap:			
		ches eaten?		
	I was given this water			
		invented by Bell in		
		sed to things	done for them.	
20	I sent for sh	opping yesterday.		
	Find the mistake, t	then correct it:		
21		e to the bookshop, all	books had be sold	Γ
22	All the apple juice di	rank by nine o'clock.	soons had be sold.	[
	The house is going t			[
24	The situation is serie	ous. Something must	done before it's too la	
25	I didn't believe what	had said.		[



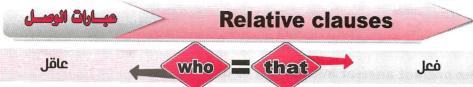


# Advanced Exercises Mark 25

	Choose the correct answer from a, b, o	c or d:	<u> </u>
1	He should that today is Sunday	y.	
	(a) been told (b) had been told	© have been told	d have being told
2	The men after the explosion.		
	are said to be arrested	<b>b</b> said to be arrested	ed
	© are said to being arrested	d are said to have	been arrested
3	Four people in a train crash.		-
	(a) have been killed (b) have killed	© are killed	d was killed
4	The Nobel Prize winner is going	the keys of the city.	
	(a) to have given (b) to be given	© have giving	d to be giving
6	You can't come in. She interview	ewed for the TV.	_
	(a) is being	© was	d has been
6	Please go away. I want left alo		_
	(a) been (b) be	© to be	
7	Many magnificent palaces and museur	ms in our city la	ately.
	(a) have built (b) has built		
8	The people next door disappeared 6 m	onths ago. They	since then.
	(a) aren't seen (b) haven't been se	een © weren't seen	dweren't being seen
9	It is winter. Everything with sn	ow.	_
	(a) is covered (b) were covered	© will cover	d are covered
10	Don't touch the door, it painte		
	(a) is just (b) has just been	© will just be	d have just been
10	The movie yesterday was real		ng.
10.11	(a) which shown (b) which showed	© shown	d which was showing
16	The villa was very large and took fou	r months	- 2
	(a) being painted (b) to be painted	© to paint	<b>d</b> be painted
16	in a car accident, she never w	anted to drive again.	<u> </u>
	Being injuring     b Injured	© Injure	<b>d</b> Being Injured
14	Ali is looking forward to as the	best player.	
-	(a) being chosen (b) choose	© choosing	<b>d</b> be chosen
1	Don't let yourself		
	(a) cheated (b) cheating	© be cheated	<b>d</b> being cheated
	> Fill in gap:		
10	The motorist was finally arrested after	· chased for ha	lf an hour.
	This school closed next year.		
	He wants this job done today.		
	The news given on the radio a		
	This kind of shops called a mi		
	Find the mistake, then correct it:		
6			[]
6	Nobody likes to being sent for at night The special information aren't publish	and in the newspapers	
		ied iii die liewspapers	yesterday.[
-	If you leave money there, it will steal.		[]
	Houses are building very quickly now. Having done.our homework was mark		[]
4	a navinu udne.dui ndinewdik was illair	TOURY IN DUIII.	

# GIANTS

## **Giants' Grammar**



🗐 بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل الفاعل العاقل (يأتي بعدها فعل) ولا يمكن حذفها

- √ An architect is someone who (that) designs buildings.
- ✓ My uncle Ali, who is a businessman, lives in Cairo.
- √ The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
- √ We know a lot of people who (that) live in the country.

Jöle who that Jelo

🗐 بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل المفعول العاقل (يأتي بعدها فاعل ويمكن حذفها)

- √ The person, who she's visiting, is her uncle.
- √ The woman who I wanted to see was away on holiday.
- ✓ Do you know the woman who (that) Ali is talking to?

Jöle whom = that Jelö

معنى (الذي / التي) تحل محل المفعول العاقل ويمكن حذفها ولَّابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل ويمكن أن يأتي معها حرف حرف حر

- √ The man whom you saw in the party is my brother.
- √ Ali is a person whom (that) I admire very much.
- √ I like the people with whom I work.

فعل کشيء) which = that

🧻 بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل فاعل غير عاقل

- √ I bought a car which is new.
- √ Toka told me about her new job, which she's enjoying a lot.

فاعل عامل کشيء) which ____ that

🧻 بمعنى (الذي/التي) وتحل محل مفعول غير عاقل (ويمكن حذفها)

- √ The food which you cook tastes delicious.
- √ We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
- √ Yesterday, we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.

🗐 بمعنى " حيث" وتعود على المكان وللبد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل (لا يأتي بعدها فعل)

- √ This is the room where (in which) I sleep (which I sleep in).
- √ The restaurant where we had lunch was near the airport.
- ✓ I recently went back to the town where I grew up.
- √ I would like to live in a place where there is plenty of sunshine.





اسم (عاقل أو غير عاقل)



اسم (عاقل أوغير عاقل)

📋 تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل مطلقا)

- √ I visit Nada whose father is an engineer.
- √ A window is a woman whose husband is dead.
- √ What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed?
- ✓ I met someone whose brother I went to school with.

زمن

when (on - in - at) which

فاعل

🧻 بمعني " حين / حينما "ولابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول.

- √ Friday is the day when (on which) we get up late.
- ✓ June is the month when (in which) we don't go to school.

Note

the day / the year / the time ......etc.

(something happens)

- ✓ I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day (that) I'm going away.
- √ The last time (that) I saw Anna, she looked great.
- √ I haven't seen Jack and Helen since the year (that) they got married.

فعل

what

فاعل

🧻 بمعنی " ما / ما<mark>ذا</mark> "و تربط بفعل.

- ✓ Do you understand what I am saying?
- ✓ We'd better decide what we need to buy.
- ✓ Did you hear what they said?

عاقل / غير عاقل

that

فاعل / فعل

- ✓ Do you know anyone who / that speaks French and Italian?
- √ Grace works for a company which / that makes furniture.
  - 🗐 لا تستخدم (that) في الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (ـ):
- √ John, who (not that) speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide.
- ✓ Anna told me about her new job, which (not that) she's enjoying a lot.
- ✓ Cairo, which is the capital, is very crowded.

🧻 هناك حالات لابد أن نستخدم فيها (that) :

أ. إذا كانت أي من الكلمات التالية تصف الاسم الذي يعود عليه ضمير الوصل

all - any - some - every - only - many - much - few

- ✓ I lent her all the money that she needed.
- ✓ Everything that they said was true.
- ✓ I gave her all the money that I had.

بدمع صفات التفضيل

✓ The fox is the cleverest animal that I have ever seen.

ج. إذا كانت تعود على عاقل وغير عاقل في نفس الوقت.

√ I told him about the leaders and the places that I admired.



#### **Omission of relative pronouns**

خدبالك

- يتم حذف كل من (who which whom) عندما يحلوا محل مفعول (اي إذا جاء بعدهم فاعل):
- √ This is the woman who I helped.

= This is the woman I helped.

the woman who i helped. — This is the woman i helped. (who - which) ينا جان حذف كل من (who - which) إذا جاء بعدهم فعل في الحالات التائية:

في المسلم فعل مبنى للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمر و اضافة (v+ing) أما أذا (be) بحذف وبتبقى (v+ing):

- ✓ The girl who is eating ice cream comes first.
  - = The girl eating ice cream comes first.
- ✓ Everyone, who entered the building, was searched by nthe police.
  - = Everyone entering the building was searched by nthe police.

بد إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و(verb to be) ويبقى التصريف الثالث للفعل.

- ✓ The man who is called Omer helps the poor.
  - = The man called Omer helps the poor.

# تُحل which محل المُكان إذا استَخْدَم كشيء أو وصف. وتحل where بعد الغير عاقـل إذا استخدم كمكان.

Important Notes

- This is my house which I bought.
- This is my house which is quite big. (which is new)
- √ This is my bag where I put my books. (which is old)
- 🕜 يمكننا استخدم حروف جر قبل (which whom) مثل (in on at to for by ) طبقاً للمعني
- ✓ Can you tell me for which (why) you were absent yesterday?
- √ The train by which I came arrived late.
- ✓ She went to meetings at which she learnt how to read and write.
- ✓ He said something for which he should apologize.
- ✓ I read an article in which the writer expresses his opinion of globalization.
- √ Ali is the boy by whom I was helped.
- ✓ She asked me where I had been, to which I replied, 
  "I can't tell you."
- ✓ Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have got lost.
  - ❸ لابد من تحديد علي ماذا يعود ضمير الوصل ومراعاة حروف جر كما يلي
- ✓ I played a match with my friend, which was exciting.

رغم وجود عاقل قبل ضمير الوصل إلا ان ضمير الوصل يعود علي المباراة.

√ I met Ahmed in the street who was very tired.

رغم وجود مكان قبل ضمير الوصل الا أن ضمير الوصل يعود الشخص.

و لا يمكننا استخدم حرف جر قبل ( who - that ) يمكنا ان يأتي بعدهم حرف جر أو آخر الجملة.

✓ This is my friend who I play with.

This is my pen that I write with.

#### tricks

# ممكئ تحاول تقهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار

Aswan is an amazing city (which - where) many tourists visit.

I like the films (which I watched them - I watched) with her.

€ He told me (what - why) he was absent.

- 4 I told him all (which that) I know.
- The car (repairing repaired was repaired) by the mechanic, is mine.
- d Ali (who's whose) clever, always gets high marks.
- I read a book (which in which) the main character was a young boy.



Mark



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 1 This is the man ........... flat we are all staying in. (c) in whose d in which (a) who (b) whose Mona is the kind of person..... likes and dislikes differ from mine. **(b)** whose d which (a) who's © whom What did you do with the money..... your mother lent you? © who (b) which d whose (a) where 4 Sham El-Nesiem is a day..... marks the beginning of spring. (b) which (a) in which (c) who d whose The man to...... I spoke is a foreigner. (b) whom d whose © which d Have you seen...... she bought from the book fair? (a) what (b) that © which d when The man, ..... the car, is called Seif. (a) that is driving **(b)** driven d who driving (c) driving Many goods ..... in all over the world are made in China. (a) which is sold (b) which sold © selling (d) sold I came to apologize for ...... I had done. I hope you will forgive me. (a) which (b) that © when (d) what 10 Ali is the boy by ..... I was helped. (a) whose (b) who © whom (d) that 10 2017 is the year ..... which my son was born. (b) at d by **10** The woman..... the wallet was stolen, called the police. © whose d from whom (b) whom (a) from who Tourists ...... stay cost much, moved to a cheaper hotel. (d) whom (b) who © who's (a) whose **1** I've hidden the money ...... no one will find it. (a) when (b) which © where d whom **Q** Did you understand ...... he explained? (b) which © whose (d) what (a) that Fill in gap: The lady, ..... is sitting in the wheelchair, is my grandmother. Uncle Ali earns a fortune, ..... is why I've asked him to lend me £1,000. **1** I gave him a drink of water, .....he drank thirstily. That's the man..... wife left him because he kept his pet snake in their bedroom. I replied, "It's a secret". Find the mistake, then correct it: **4** The students who test grades were low had to take extra lessons. [.....] The nurse who's responsibility is to look after children, looks cheerful. [......] He bought all the tools requiring to fix his old car. [.....] The hotel, where is in the centre of the town, is to be knocked down. **QE** This is Aya about whose I talked to you.





	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
1	I saw a man car was damaged in an accident.				
		<b>b</b> which		d who	
2	George showed me	some pictures	by his father.		
		<b>b</b> painted		d they were painted	
3	Sarah couldn't meet	t us, was a sh	name.		
	(a) that	<b>b</b> it	© what	d which	
4	I don't like stories	have unhappy	endings.	,	
		<b>b</b> they	© which	d who	
6	What's the name of	the man?		- 1000000	
	@ you borrowed his	car	<b>b</b> which car you bor	rowed	
	© whose car you bo	rrowed	d his car you borrow		
6	The police found the	e car owner t	eaches us English.		
	@ whom			d whose	
7	This is the city	witnessed the sum	ımit.		
	@ who	<b>b</b> which	© where	d in which	
8	Everyone th	e building, was searc	hed by the police.		
	a entering	<b>b</b> entered	© enters	d who enter	
9	He said "I'm sorry".	he meant I do	apologize.		
	a for which	<b>b</b> which	© to which	d by which	
10	I really don't like foo	od in deep fat.		•	
	(a) fried	<b>b</b> which fried	© is fried	d frying	
10	The people	next door to me are v	ery noisy.		
	@ who living		© are living	d live	
12	I usually do I	promise.			
	@ which	<b>b</b> when	© what	d who	
13	Nada made a sugge	stion Nasr ok	ojected.		
		<b>b</b> to which	© that	d on which	
14	The books	by Agatha Christie, w	ere made into films.		
	@ written	<b>b</b> were written	© had been written	d were writing	
15	The girl in th	e last row made too r	nuch noise.		
	who sitting	<b>b</b> sitting	© who sit	d was sitting	
	Fill in gap:		r 8 10 10 20 1		
16	The men. with	I lived in London w	vere brave.		
10	Peopleincor	me is low can hardly a	afford the high cost of	livina.	
18	I found the book	which you looked	d.	9.	
			st language is not Ara	ibic.	
	I don't know		gaaga aa aa aa		
	Find the mistake, t				
64			.1.4		
		e used to live in was o	oia. Is woman is described	[] []	
				3 - Company of the Co	
		in Africa and Europe		[]	
		hose kind and co-ope		[]	
46	inis is the football to	eam wno members ha	ave won gold medals.	[]	







CONTROL							
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
1	My mum admired the car						
	@ I bought	<b>b</b> that I bought it	© which I bought for	d I bought it			
2	Ahmed com	e first, is my cousin.					
	@ who	<b>b</b> Who's	© whose	d doesn't			
3	The Eastern Desert,	is very dry, h	nas very little wildlife.				
	(a) where	<b>b</b> who	© when	d which			
4	Mohamed Salah sco	red the goal E	Egypt to World Cup fir	nals.			
_	@ send	<b>b</b> sent		d is sent			
E		work was corrected,					
_		<b>b</b> whose		d which			
6		I enjoy living					
4		<b>b</b> what		d where			
7		by Yousef Idrees, are		_			
4		<b>b</b> written		d are writing			
8		me the file c					
4		<b>b</b> whose		d that			
Q	The chair I w	as sitting broke dow	n.	<b>2</b>			
44	(a) whose	<b>b</b> for which I spent my child	© on which	d which			
UU	This is the town in	I spent my child	dhood.				
44	(a) which		© when	d why			
UU			sses his opinion of glo				
44		<b>b</b> which					
U			riter's opinion of glob				
46	wnere	<b>b</b> which	© at which	in which			
UE			for, exported goods to				
90	Ali is the best one	<b>b</b> whose	© where	<b>d</b> that			
W	(a) whose		© who	d that			
46		nany important people		W IIIdi			
WG.		<b>b</b> for which		d to which			
46	Fill in gap:			may de de como como como como como como como com			
		car has ever					
			I didn't realize				
18	My daughter,	ambition is to emigi	rate to Australia, has t	finally got her visa.			
19	I know an Italian res	taurantserve	es excellent home-ma	de pasta.			
20	I know an Italian res	taurantyou c	an always get a table	•			
	Find the mistake, t						
61	***************************************	***************************************	my brother				
		awarded the prize is ith us, traveled to Ale		[]			
		few months later who		[			
				[]			
	I felt great pity for the woman who baby died.  I told him all who I know about the solar system.  [						



## Glants' Gramma

#### **Reported statements**



said - told - promised complain - explainedwarn- admit- threaten مفعول

يوجد أفعال تحتاج إلى مفعول وأخرى لا تحتاج تستخدم that كرابط ويمكن حذفها

صيغة جملة وماضي (ماعدا حالات عدم تغير الزمن)

باقي الجملة

#### 

direct	indirect		
say	say		
says	says		
said	اي فعل لازم - said		

direct	indirect	
say to	tell	
says to	tells	
said to	told	

🕜 تعذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ويمكن استخدام that أو تعذف.

🕝 تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما يلي:

direct	indirect
I	he - she
we	they
our	their

dire	ct	indirect	
you	ضمير فاعل	he - she - they	
you	ضمير مفعول	him - her - them - us	
your-my	ملكية	his - her . their - my	

#### 🗗 تتغير الأزمنة كما يلي:

direct	indirect	لاحــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــــ
play / plays	played	يتحول المضارع البسيط إلى الماضي بسيط
played	had played	يتحول الماضي البسيط إلى الماضي التام
(am / is / are) playing	(was / were) playing	يتحول المضارع المستمر إلى الماضي المستمر
(have / has) played	had played	يتحول المضارع التام إلى الماضي التام
(has / have) been playing	had been playing	يتحول المضارع التام المستمر إلى الماضي التام المستمر
(was / were) playing	had been playing	يتحول الماضي المستمر إلى الماضي التام المستمر
will play	would play	
shall play	should / would play	
may play	might play	الأفعال الناقصة تحول إلى الماضي
can play	could play	
must play	had to play	

#### 🗗 تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما يلي:

direct	indirect	direct	indirect	direct	indirect
now	then	tomorrow	the next day the following day	last week	the week before the previous week
			the day after		the last week
this	that	yesterday	the day before the previous day the last day	next week	the next week the following week the week after
these	those	ago	before	tonight	that night
here	there	yet	by then	today	that day



✓ Toka said to Jana, "I will meet you tomorrow."
Toka told Jana that she would meet her the following day.

✓ Ali said to me, "I am preparing a party now."
Ali told me he was preparing a party then.

✓ Toka said, "I have my breakfast at 7 o' clock."

Toka said she had her breakfast at 7 o' clock."



• لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع أو الستقبل(و لا نغير الكلمات الدالة على الأزمنة):

✓ Toka says, "I don't believe this story." Toka says she doesn't believe this story.

2 لا تتغر الأزمنة إذا كانت الحملة تعبر عن حقيقة:

✓ Jana said, "If water freezes, it changes into ice." Jana said that if water freezes, it changes into ice.

❸ لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك كلمات تأتي بعد فعل القول مثل:

(now / just now / a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / recently)

✓ Mr Ahmed said just now, "I have already done my book."
Mr Ahmed said just now he has already done his book.

لا تتغير الأزمنة مع بعض التعبيرات مثل:

(would like / would rather / had better / should / would / could / might)

✓ Ahmed said, "I'd rather work."

Ahmed said that he'd rather work.

قي حالة وجود if يتغير الزمن في الحالة الأولى فقط (لا يتغير في الحالة الثانية والثالثة):

✓ He said, "If you don't get into hospital, you won't get well."

He said if I didn't get into hospital, I wouldn't get well.

6 في حالة وجود wish / If only للتعبير عن التمني او الندم:

- √ He said," I wish I traveled abroad." He said that he wished he traveled abroad.
  - © في حالة وجود used to بمعنى اعتاد على:
- ✓ Seif said to Jana "I used to cry much when I was young."
  He told Jana that he used to cry much when he was young.

#### السؤال في المديد مباهر

#### **Reported Questions**

خدبسالك

يُوجِد نوعان مـن السـؤال (السـؤال بفعـل مسـاعد والسـؤال باسـتخدام أداة استفهام) وللتحويل إلى غير مباشر كما يلى:

🛈 تحويل فعل القول كما يلي:

direct	indirect
said to	asked
said	wanted to know / wondered / inquired / asked

② تعذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص)

🧊 ونستخدم if أو whether في السؤال بالفعل المساعد ونستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام في السؤال بأداة استفهام.

- € تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما في الجملة الخبرية.
  - تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.
- 🗗 يتم تحويل صيغة السؤال إلي صيغة جملة خبرية. (لا يوجد صيغة سؤال في الغير مباشر)
  - 🙃 تحول الظروف الزمنية والمكانية كما في الجملة الخبرية:

√ "Where do you live?" asked Huda. Huda asked me where I lived.

ولكل طرسي اللغة الأنجازات



لا تتغير الأزمنـــا في الحالات التالية



- √ "Why are you laughing?" Sami asked her Sami asked her why she was laughing.
- ✓ "Who were you talking to yesterday?" asked Heba.

  Heba asked who we had been talking to the day before.
- ✓ "When will you be back?" asked their father.
  Their father asked them when they would be back.



whether ونستخدم if / whether إذا كانت إجابة السؤال Yes / No تُستخدم or إذا كانت إجابة السؤال Or.

- ✓ She said to me, "Do you speak English?"

  She asked me if I spoke English.
- ✓ He said, "Have you ever eaten pizza or not?"
   He wondered whether I had ever eaten pizza or not.
- اذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام مثل How / Where / When تستخدم نفس الأداة كاداه ربط:
- ✓ He said, "Why are you crying?"
- He asked why I was crying.
- الكلمات (do / does / did) عند تحويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر في (does / do) يحول الفعل إلى الماضي البسيط و(did) بتحول الفعل إلى الماضي التام.
  - ✓ Jana said to Toka, "How did you go to the work?" Jana asked Toka how she had gone to the work.
  - ✓ Jana said to Toka, "When does she watch TV?"

    Jana asked Toka when she watched TV.
    - 4 لا تتغير الأزمنة في بعض التحويلات كما في الجملة الخبرية:
  - √ Toka asks Adam, "What will you do?"
     -Toka asks Adam what he will do.
  - ✓ Mr Ahmed asked just now, "Where is the club?" Mr Ahmed asked just now where the club is.

الجملة الامرية والاقتراح والتعريب

Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice

الجملة الأمرية

"Open this door." هي جملة التي تبدأ بفعل في المصدر في الإثبات مثل "Don't waste your time." أو بـ don't في حالة النفي مثل

🗐 وللتحويل إلى كلام غير مباشر كما يلي:

🛈 تحويل فعل القول كما يلي:

direct	indirect
said to	complained - warned - ordered - asked - told - advised

2 تعذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ونستخدم:

في الأمر الثبت نستخدم (الصدر + to)

- ✓ Ali said to his son "study hard."
- √ Ali advised (told asked) his son to study hard.

في الأمر المنفي نستخدم (الصدر + not to)

- √ Seif said to Jana "Don't make noise."
- ✓ Seif advised (told) Jana not to make noise.
  - ❸ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما في الجملة الغبرية:
    - تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.
    - تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما في الجملة الخبرية.



#### استغمام الأقعال في الغير مباشر

في حالة التمني (wish)

wish ..... to + inf. Or noun

√ He said to me, "Have a nice holiday."

⇒ She wished me a nice holiday.

في حالة الاتهام (accuse)

accuse ..... of + V + ing

✓ Nada said to Aya, "You stole my wallet."

⇒ Nada accused Aya of stealing her wallet.

في حالة اللقتراح (suggest) في حالة التوصية (recommend)

suggest / recommend + v +ing

suggest / recommend that + فاعل + should + inf. ( فاعل + inf.)

√ He said, "Let's sing" = He suggested singing.

⇒ He suggested that they should sing.

في حالة الوعد (promise)

Promise to + inf. / promised that + حملة

√ His father said, "If you get high marks, I'll buy you a bike."

His father promised to buy him a bike if he got high marks.

advise someone to / not to + inf.

في حالة النصيحة (advise)

✓ He said to me, "You'd better sleep early."

The advised me to sleep early.

اذا بدأت الحملة داخل الأقواس بـ If الافتراضية (للنصيحة) تحول كالأتي : ﴿ الْأُورِاتِي اللَّهِ اللَّهِ اللَّهِ ا

✓ He said, "If I were you, I would study hard."

He advised me to study hard.

في حالة الاعتراف (admit)

admit + v + ing / admit that حملة

✓ She said, "I did this crime."

⇒ She admitted doing that crime.

في حالة الموافقة (agree)

agree to + inf. / agree that + حملة

✓ He said to me, "yes, I will go with you."

He agreed to go with me.

في حالة الرفض (refuse)

refuse to + inf. / refuse that + حملة

✓ She said to me, "No, I won't go with you."

She refused to go with me.

في حالة الإنكار (deny)

deny + v +ing / deny that جملة

The thief said, "I didn't rob the house."

The thief denied robbing the house.

The thief denied that he had robbed the house.

في حالة الاعتذار (apologise)

apologize for + V + ing

√ He said, "I'm sorry I didn't attend your wedding party." He apologised for not attending my wedding party.



حملة + offer that offer to + inf. في حالة العرض √ He said, "Shall I help you to cross the road?" (offer) ⇒ He offered to help me cross the road. ask ..... to + inf. في حالة الطلب ✓ She said, "Could you lend me your dictionary, please?" (request) ⇒ She asked me to lend her my dictionary. invite ..... to + inf. في حالة الدعوة √ He said, "Would you like to come to my birthday party?" (invitation) ⇒ He invited me to his birthday party. blame ..... for + V + ing في حالة اللوم √ He said, "Why didn't you study hard?" (blame) ⇒ He blamed me for not studying hard. decide to + inf. في حالة القرار √He said, "I've made up my mind to give up smoking" (decide) ⇒ He decided to give up smoking. warn someone not to + inf. warn someone against + V + ing في حالة التحذير He said to me. "Don't cross the road." (warn) The warned me not to cross the road. The warned me against crossing the road. insist on + V + ina في حالة اللصرار √He said, "I will leave now." (insist)

# Wed हर्नी क्रिक्स

تحول **must** إلى **had to** في الماضي.

- ✓ He said, "I must study hard."
  - ⇒ He said that he had to study hard.
    - 🗐 تحول must إلى would have to في المستقبل.
- √ He said, "I must come tomorrow."
  - ⇒ He said that he would have to come tomorrow.

⇒ He insisted on leaving then.

- 🗐 لا تتحول **must** إذا كانت تدل على وجوب دائم.
- ✓ She said, "We must obey our parents."
  - ⇒ She said that they must obey their parents.
    - must have + P.P إذا كانت تدل على استنتاج الي must have 🗐
- √ He said to me, "Ali must be ill."
  - → He told me that Ali must have been ill.



# مثا الجزء يساعدك على الحل

• لاحظ تحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وما بأتى معهم كما بلى:

Direct	Reported	عند وجود تلك الكلمات لابد أن تحتوي الجملة على	
now	then		
at this moment	at that moment	was, were + inf. + ing	
ago	before		
yesterday	the day before / the last day / the previous day	had + P.P	
last week "month - year"	the week before / the last week / the previous week		
tomorrow	the day after / the next day / the following day	would + inf. مصدر	
next week "month - year"	the week after / the next week / the following week	was / were + going to +inf. was / were + inf. +ing	
tonight	that night		
today	that day		
yet	by then	mad + P.P	
for / since	for / since		

- ✓ Toka said that she was preparing for her birthday party then.
- ✓ Jana told me that she had been to Luxor the week before.
- ✓ Ahmed said that he would buy that nice jacket the following week.

◙ لاحظ أن الكلام الغير مباشر دائماً يكون في صيغة الجملة وزمن الماضي (ماعدا حالات عدم تغير الزمن):

Jana told Toka that ..... bought a new dress.

a has she

(b) she has

© had she

d she had

خطأ (صيغة سؤال ومضارع)

حطا (ا

خطأ (صيغة سؤال)

صحيحة (ماضي وجملة)

Jana asked Toka where ..... bought this dress.

a has she

**(b)** she has

(c) had she

d she had

خطأ (صبغة سؤال ومضارع)

خطأ (مضارع)

خطأ (صيغة سؤال)

صحيحة (ماضي وحملة)

❸ إذا جاءت أداة الاستفهام بعد صيغ الطلب تعامل كجملة وليست سؤال مثل:

- ✓ Can you tell me where the club is?
- ✓ Do you know where Toka went?

بعض افعال القول لا يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

said / admitted / reported / answered / explained / complained / replied wanted to know / wondered / inquired

- √ Hani wanted to know if he could go.
- ✓ Mona inquired where the book was.
- √ Hani said that he came late.

🗐 للحظ أن بعض أفعال القول لابد أن يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

told / persuaded / convinced / warned / reminded

✓ Seif told Aya that she was lazy.



**Wise Saying** 

Sometimes you win, sometimes you learn.

أحياناً تربح .. وأحياناً تتعلم





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:			
1	Ahmed promised that he late once more.					
	(a) wouldn't be (b) mustn't be (c) can't be (d) won't be					
2	Marwan said that he feed the birds.					
	a has to	<b>b</b> have to	© must	d had to		
3	Salah said that his fa	avourite subject	history.			
	(a) was	<b>b</b> were	© has been	d will be		
4	Omnia that s	she had a headache.				
	(a) complained	<b>b</b> told	© asked	<b>d</b> warned		
6	Mary says that she	her room every	y day.			
		<b>b</b> is cleaning		d cleans		
		rive me into the city co				
	(a) said	<b>b</b> threatened	© ordered	<b>d</b> agreed		
1	Hani promised	me his mobile.				
		<b>b</b> to lending	© lending	<b>d</b> lend		
		. her to withdraw from				
		<b>b</b> suggested		<b>d</b> invited		
		why so many student		• • •		
-		<b>b</b> the following day				
10		ner there befo		•		
•		<b>b</b> I had been		d) I go		
00		ed him where				
		<b>b</b> had he been		d has he been		
12		wait for us till				
•		<b>b</b> can		d shall		
13		hat her purse had bee		_		
		<b>b</b> day previous				
14		shopping at the new F				
•		<b>b</b> warned		<b>d</b> suggested		
16	Aya denied	the car window.				
44	(a) breaking	<b>b</b> break	© to breaking	d to break		
	Eill in gent					
	Fill in gap:		•			
-		play football that e				
17	Aya me wha	at I would buy for her a	as a present.			
18	I asked him what he	been doing th	ne day before.			
19	"Let's go to the bear	ch", he said. He sugge	ested to the b	each.		
	_	he ate too many swee				
44	Find the mistake,			n v sala kanana masalah kanan	7	
20	Ahmed told me that	he has been to Alexa	ndria the week before		_	
22	Ali asked Yasser wh	nat was he doing.		[		
23	Ali wanted to know	if I was ready for the i	nterview or not.	[	_	
24	He asked where his	mother was. "Where	was my mother?" he	asked. [	]	
		w where Mona has be		[	1	
44	ivalli walited to kilo	AA AALICI C IAIOITA ITAS DE		L		

128





Wark

ng
1g
ıg .
ng .
ıg
ng .
ng
ıg
ng
ng
-
n
arly.
,
world.
te
]
•





_		answer from a, b, c o	***************************************	
		he said. He assured		
		<b>b</b> can do		d did
		rry. "You hurr		
		<b>b</b> will better		
8	She admitted having	${f g}$ stolen the purse." ${f I}$ .		
	@ steal	<b>b</b> have stolen	© would steal	<b>d</b> stolen
4	He told her to bring	it the next day. "Bring	it, he said	to her.
	(a) the next day	<b>b</b> another day	<b>©</b> tomorrow	d the following day
E	He ordered them to	stand to attention. "S	tand to attention.", he	<b></b>
	orders them	<b>b</b> ordered they	© they ordered	d ordered them
6	Jana that sh	ne had taken my walle	et.	
_	@ denied	<b>b</b> promised condary school	© begged	d offered
7	I knew that a new se	condary school	in our village rece	ntly.
	(a) has built	<b>b</b> has been built	© had been built	d had built
8	He said that he	be able to sleep u	ntil he had finished th	e story.
	@ won't	<b>b</b> didn't	© hasn't	d wouldn't
9	He said heh	is grandmother in hos	spital the week before	<b>).</b>
		<b>b</b> visited		
10	Toka told Jana that:	she look for a me	chanic when her car	broke down.
	@ must	<b>b</b> has to	© had to	d have to
	Can you tell me	now?		
		<b>b</b> what time it is		
		uch to go to t		
	(a) it costs	<b>b</b> does it cost broke the window	© the cost will	d will it cost
			N.	
	(a) if	<b>b</b> that	© why	d who
14	She me if I	bought a new car.		
		<b>b</b> wandered		<b>d</b> inquired
15	He I was la	te and if I had missed	the bus.	
	asked if	<b>b</b> wondered why	© said that	d told me
	Fill in gap:			
16	Ava Mona th	nat London is the bigg	est city in England.	
		I could tell her how		
		was going to see the r		the week
		• •	-	ine week.
		oms the smal		
20	Our teacher says the	at he ready to	help all the pupils.	
	Find the mistake, t	then correct it:		
	They wanted to know			[]
		why I had chosen that	T-shirt	[]
			i -oilli t.	[]
	Mother asked me tio		33 A 13	
				ead that book. []
25	Aisha's parents ask	ed her unless she had	d finished her homewo	ork [



# Advanced Exercises Mark

	Chases the servest			
		answer from a, b, c o		minimus samus samus
U		I for the next		_
4			© we waited	
2				upon his suggestion.
4			© didn't you	d you didn't
3		the people not to		
_			<b>©</b> instructed	
4	"Don't park here?"	- The policeman said	d we park ther	e.
			© shouldn't	
6	My friend wanted me	e for the same	e job as it's not reward	ding.
	(a) to apply	<b>b</b> not to apply	© don't apply	
6	I suggested that Ali.	to the club wi	th us.	
		<b>b</b> to go		d going
7	I asked the tourist	he comes from	ı <b>.</b>	
	(a) whether	<b>b</b> when	© where	<b>d</b> which
8	Ahmed said that he	would buy nic	ce jacket the following	week.
	(a) these	<b>b</b> those	© that	(d) this
9	The criminal	. that he killed his neig	ghbour deliberately.	
			© threatened	(d) admitted
10	I that Ahmed	go by his car.	Ŭ	9
	@ promised	(b) said	© told	d suggested
11	I asked just now wha	at		
	a was the time	<b>(b)</b> the time is	© is the time	d the time was
12	She told me that I	due care to my	work. I actually appre	eciate her advice.
	a needn't have given	,	<b>(b)</b> could have given	
	c should have given		<b>b</b> could have given <b>d</b> should give with you.", they s	
13	They suggested they	come with me. "	with you.". they s	aid.
	(a) We'd go	(b) Come	© We'll go	d Let's go
14		k early. "I bac		9
	a 'd come	(b) 'Il be	© am to be	d would be
16	She wanted to know	where he was. "Whe	re?", she den	nanded.
			© would he be	
		7		
			olate because it was v	very not.
10	He told up that he	said. He said that he	never that.	
40	My fother m	come the follow	t bold roward ma	
	She me how	e if I had done my bes	t, ne a reward me.	
Marie Co.	***************************************			
	Find the mistake, t			
		would visit us as soor		[]
		had a driving licence.		[]
		er if our exam papers		[]
		l a lie when she was fi		[]
25	The officer begged t	he coldiers to fire at t	he terrerist	r 1

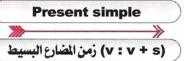


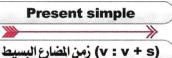
#### حالات ۱۱

#### If Conditionals



# Zero conditional





- 🗐 تستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية عامة وللتعبير عن عادات ثابتة لا تتغير ولا ترتبط بتوقيت معين:
- √ If you heat ice, it melts.
- √ If we mix white and red, we get pink.
  - 🗐 للبد أن تكون الحقيقة عامه وليست خاصة وإذا كانت الحقيقة خاصة تستخدم الحالة الأولى كما يلي:
    - استخدام صفة إشارة (those / these / that / this) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول.
    - استخدام صفة ملكية (....'s...) My / his / her / its / your / our / their / ....'s...)
      - 🕄 ارتباط حدوت الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد أو ما يدل على ذلك.

لاحظ الفرق

- √ If I use the computer for so long, I always get tired.
- ✓ If I use the computer for so long today, I will get tired.
  - 🗐 المثال الأول عادة عامة طوال حياتي لكن المثال الثاني وصف لموقف محدد.
- ✓ If we boil water, it steams.

(عامة)

✓ If we boil thin water, it will steam.

(موقف خاص)

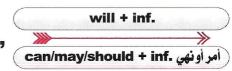
√ If we boil water in this pot, it will steam.

(خاص)



# First conditional





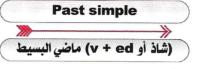
- 🗐 تستخدم للتعبير عن إمكانية حقيقية لحدوث شيء في المستقبل تتوفر شروط حدوثه.
- ✓ If you study hard, you will succeed.
- ✓ If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
  - 🗐 يمكننا استخدام الأمر أو النهى أو الطلب في جملة جواب الشرط
- ✓ If Jana calls, tell her I am here.
  - 🗐 يمكننا استخدام (may) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن الاحتمال أو (can) للتعبير عن المقدرة
- ✓ If Jana studies well, she can get a high mark.
- √ If Seif <mark>looks</mark> at me carefully, he **may recognise** me. من جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن النصيحة أو (should) يمكننا استخدام إلى التعبير عن الإلزام إلى الإلاام إلى الإلكام إلى الإلكام التعبير عن الإلاام
- √ If you ask me, you should see a doctor.
- √ If Seif comes late, he has to apologise.

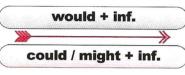




Second conditional

Third conditional





🗐 تعبر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل أو شيء تخيلي في المضارع.

- √ What would you do if you were bitten by a snake?
- √ Who would you ask if you needed help?
- ✓ If I knew his number, I would phone him.
- √ If I was / were a bird, I could fly.
- ✓ If I studied hard, I would pass.
- ✓ If I was / were rich, I would build a palace.
- ✓ If we went by bus, it would be cheaper.
- √ What would you do if you won a lot of money?
- ✓ If there was (or were) an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?
- ✓ If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out)
  - 🗐 تستخدم الحالة الثانية لطلب أو أعطاء نصيحة.
- ✓ If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.
- ✓ If you were in my position, what would you do?



إلى للتعبير عن استحالة الحدوث وتستخدم للانتقاد أو الندم: نام

- √ If you had gone to the sports club, you would / could / might have seen Ali.
- √ If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
- ✓ If I'd known you were in hospital, I would have gone to see you.
- ✓ I didn't go out last night. I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired.
- ✓ If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn't have walked into the wall.
- ✓ The view was wonderful. If I'd had a camera with me, I would have taken pictures.

#### Compare

- √ I'm not hungry. If I was hungry, I would eat something. (now)
- ✓ I wasn't hungry. If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something. (past)

#### Compare

#### would have, could have and might have:

- √ If the weather hadn't been so bad, we would (could) have gone out.
  - (= we would have been able to go out)
- ✓ If the weather hadn't been so bad, we might have gone out.

  (= perhaps we would have gone out)



#### خدرالك

- ◘ يتم حل جمل الاختياري عن طريق النظر إلى الجملة الكاملة سواء كانت جملة فعـل الشـرط أو جملـة جـواب الشـرط ثـم تحديـد
   الحالة من الجملة الكامل كما يلى:
- ✓ If she..... up early, she would catch the train.
- الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة جواب الشرط وبهــا .would + inf هــي تعبــر عــن الحالــة الثانيــة أي الاختيــاري الصــحيح سوف بكون واضى بسبط.
  - ✓ If she had read quickly, she ..... the competition.
- الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط وبها .had + P.P هي الحالـة الثالثـة أي اللختيـاري الصـحيح سـوف يكـون الصحيح سـوف يكـون would have + P.P.
  - و لاحظ كلمة had فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما .had + P.P تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة.
  - و الحالة الثالثة. would have + P.P. فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما would have + P.P. تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة.

#### We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence:

- ✓ I'd be scared if somebody pointed a gun at me. (NOT if somebody would point)
- √ If we went by bus, it would be cheaper. (NOT if we would go)

#### But you can use if ... would when you ask somebody to do something:

✓ I would be grateful if you would let me know your decision as soon as possible.



نستخدم بدلا من (If) (Should+.....+ inf.) كالتالي:

حذف **if** الحالة الاولى

- ✓ If Toka studies hard, she will succeed.
  - = Should Toka study hard, she will succeed.

#### حذف if الحالة الثانية نستخدم بدلامن (If)

- 🕻 وإذا كانت (were) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعني لو كنت:
- √ If I were you, I'd help poor people. = were I you, I'd help poor people.
  - € وإذا كانت (had) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعنى لو امتلك :
- ✓ If I had much money, I'd buy a car. = Had I much money, I'd buy a car.
  - 👣 وإذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were) تأتي .Should + subject.+ inf مكان (if):
- √ If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  - =Should Toka study hard, she'd succeed.
    - 3 وإذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were + subject + to + inf. تأتي (were + subject + to + inf.
- √ If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  - =were Toka to study hard, she'd succeed.

#### نستغدم بدلا من (Had + subject + P.P) (If) كالتالي:

✓ If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
= Had Toka left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.



حذف if الحالة الثالثة







If = in case = providing (that) = provided (that) = as long as = on condition that = supposing (that) = imagine (that) الأاء (that)



- √ You can borrow my pen if / provided that / on condition that / as long as you
  give it back.
- ✓ In case Toka left earlier, she wouldn't miss the train.
- ✓ Supposing / Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

#### in case

- ✓ I'll leave my mobile phone switched on in case Jane calls.
- ✓ I'll draw a map for you in case you have problems finding our house.
- ✓ I'll remind them about the meeting in case they've forgotten.
- √ I'll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.
- √ You should insure your bike in case it is stolen.



نى حالة | If (there is) = In case of = With = By + noun / v + ing



- ✓ In case of emergency, call 122.
- √ Toka wouldn't miss the train in case of / with / by leaving earlier.
  in case of ... = if there is....
- √ In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- √ In case of emergency, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)



unless = except if = If ......not...(جملة)

unless = without / but for / If it weren't for + noun / Inf. ing اذا لم لولم

- ✓ If they didn't have a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ Unless they had a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ Without having a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ If Toka didn't leave earlier, she would miss the train.
- ✓ Unless Toka left earlier, she would miss the train.
- ✓ Without / But for leaving earlier, Toka would miss the train.

خدبالك

lf it were not for + inf. + ing / n.. → subj. + Would + inf. ... الحالة الثانية الحالة الثالثة If it hadn't been for + inf. + ing / n.. → subj. + Would have + P.P

# If tricks

ممكن تحاول تقهم و تكتب سبب الاختيار

(Had - Were) I money, I would buy a car.

(Had - Were) I a bird, I could fly.

(Had - Were) I wings, I could fly.

(Should - Were) he study hard, he would pass the exam.

(Should - Were) I to study hard, I get full marks.

(Should - Were) you meet Ali, tell him your good news.

(If - Had) I been stupid, I wouldn't have solved that problem.

(If - Had) I read the book, I would have explained it.

If the money I had, (had - had had - had been) enough, I would have bought a car.

If he read the book, (will - would) he understand it?



# 

-				***************************************	
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
1	If it rains tomorrow	, weat home.			
	a will stay	<b>b</b> stayed	© stay	d might stay	
2	As long as you	boil your food, it w	on't lose vitamins.		
	@ don't	<b>b</b> won't	© hadn't	d haven't	
3	You earn m	ore if you spoke Fren	nch.		
	@ will	<b>b</b> would	© must	d should	
4	Iit very muc	h if they gave the job	to Ali.		
	@ don't like	<b>b</b> didn't like	© won't like	d wouldn't like	
6	I his addres	ss, I could visit her.			
_	@ Had	<b>b</b> If	© Should	<b>d</b> Were	
6	If the money I had,		ave bought a new hou	ise.	
	(a) had			d were	
		catch the met		-1 40000	
4		<b>b</b> would he		d will he	
		ce, I might have lost r			
	@ Without	<b>(b)</b> If	© Unless	d Should	
			ould you do every day		
-	•	<b>b</b> As long	© Imagine	<b>d</b> Supposed	
	Only call us		O **		
44	a in case	(b) in case of	© if	d as long as	
UU	she arrive	early, I would help he	r.	(A) Hallana	
		<b>b</b> should	© were	<b>d</b> Unless	
	If I could, I		Quill as	(A)	
		<b>b</b> would go		d must	
UQ	wnat napp	en if you didn't go to t		<b>d</b> would	
44	@ will	<b>b</b> must	© may	would	
<b>U</b> U	(a) Will	ne cinema if you had ı <b>ⓑ Shall</b>	Mould	<b>d</b> Should	
		very angry if I lost the		u) Siloolu	
		<b>b</b> should be		d won't be	
		(b) Siloold be	woold to be	Wolli be	
	and the second second second		d to come to the party	?	
	Would you help me if I in trouble?				
18	What you do If you got lost in a big city?				
19	If you ride the bus to Dahab, it take seven hours to get there.				
20	If you study all nigh	t, you be exh	austed at the time of t	he test.	
	Find the mistake, t				
21		out it if you had the tin	16		
22	•	d the window if it'd ha		[]	
23				[]	
		t Hassan if I stayed at	. HOITIE.		
	If I were with them,			[]	
45	If the weather was fine tomorrow, we'll go camping.				

136





	Choose the correct answer from	ma. b. c or d:	
1			
•	If you have enough time, I  (a) would (b) will		_
2	She wouldn't mind if I, wo	•	d would have
4	(a) hadn't gone (b) didn't go		A damle as
3			d don't go
ď	If Tokaus to the wedding,  (a) will invite (b) invites		
4			d would invite
4	If autumn starts, treestheir		
6	(a) losing (b) will lose	0	d would lose
•	If Egypta lot of rain, it migl	nt nave a lot more trees.	
6	(a) had (b) had had	© will have	d was having
4	If you want to come first, it		
9		© would	d will
U	he played well, he wou		<b>O</b>
8	(a) If (b) Should		<b>d</b> Were
Q	If he thirsty, he would h		
•	(a) had had (b) had beer	© were	<b>d</b> had
e	If the books hadn't been so exp	ensive, I some.	_
44	(a) would buy (b) would ha		d had bought
10	I your teacher, I would		2
44	Were     b If	© Had	<b>d</b> Should
	Youbetter if you take this n	nedicine.	
	(a) felt (b) will feel	© would have felt	<b>d</b> would feel
UZ	Iron if you leave it in the or		
44	(a) rust (b) will rust		d would rust
18	<i>j</i>	we will have to go to another	cinema.
44	(a) Were (b) Should	© Had	<b>@ Will</b>
14	he to help us, we would	d be saved.	
	(a) If (b) were	© had	<b>d</b> should
16	emergency, call this nu	ımber.	
	(a) If (b) In case	© In case of	<b>d</b> But for
	Fill in gap:	-	
16	I would have that mobile if I	enough money	
10	If metal is heated, it	direction.	
18			
	If I was taller, I play bas		
90	If you mix red and green paint,		
20	If I mistaken, I will apole	gize to her.	
	Find the mistake, then correct	it:	
20	If ice is heated, it melt.		[]
22	If water freezes, it will turn into	ice	[]
26			
200 000	Unless you were in China, what	3	[]
<b>20</b>	Am I a movie star, I could get an		rant. []
26	Were he a proper plan, he woul	dn't waste his time.	[]



# Mark فالمالة Advanced Exercises

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
			I'd inform the police.	and the same of th
	had stolen	<b>b</b> had been stolen		d was stolen
2	•	ould have gone out fo		© 1145 5151511
-	Were he	<b>b</b> Were he to feel		d Had he been
•			e minimized your mista	
	(a) had been	<b>b</b> were	© had	d had had
4			reached a reasonable	•
	(a) discussed	h was discussed	© had discussed @ ha	d been discussed
		ance if there an		a peen albeebea
	(a) was	<b>b</b> is	© were	d will be
		visit you; really I		
	(a) weren't	b were	© am	d am not
1		b, if I have time. I have	•	
	(a) would	<b>b</b> may	© should	d have to
		add salt if	( ) 311001G	
			© 'Il be necessary	d is necessary
9	If she read the new	s she shocked	to read about the terri	ble accident.
4	(a) is	<b>b</b> will be		d) were
10		•	f I had had enough mo	
44		noney I had eno		and the same of th
	a was	<b>b</b> wasn't	© had been	d hadn't been
11		n the garden, Ino	0	O
44	(a) had	<b>b</b> have	© has	d will have
12	•	,exciting, I would	•	
-	a had had			d had
18	she been r		Idn't have broken her	100 April 2000 1000 1000 1000 1000 1000 1000 100
	(a) If	<b>b</b> Were	© Had	d Should
14	water, all p		0.1	
-	a in case of		© If	d Even if
16		do if I failed m	•	
		<b>b</b> will I		d I would
	Fill in gap:			and the second s
16		in the lottery, what w	ill you do?	
		leave now if she want		
		uldn't tell anyone abo		
		ving licencey		
		e time, I'd have read r		
	Find the mistake,			
60			. La aumilia	
		uldn't have been able		[
22		company, I would ach		L
28	if ne nere right nov	w, he would know the	uuui. oon ahlo to mako tho r	<u></u>
24	uniess our savings	s, we wouldn't have b	een able to make the p ve to worry about sper	nding money f
26	nau i been a millio	mane, i would not hat	ve to worry about sper	ranny morney. [



鄶



# Linking words







#### **Linking Words showing addition**

and = in addition

(تربط بين جملتين)

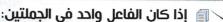
بالإضافة إلى

✓ We went shopping and watched a film.

Examples

✓ We went shopping. In addition, we watched a film.



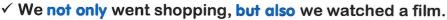






- ✓ In addition to going shopping, we watched a film.
- ✓ Besides going shopping, we watched a film.
- ✓ As well as going shopping, we watched a film.
- إذا استخدم (as well as = in addition to = besides) إذا استخدم يتبع الفاعل الأول:
  - ✓ I am keen on music. My friend is keen on music.
  - ✓ I as well as my brother am keen on music.
  - ✓ My brother as well as I is keen on music.
    - مع هذه التعبيرات (not only but also / or / either...or / neither...nor) الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني
  - ✓ Either the library or bookstores are open.
  - ✓ Either the bookstores or the library is open.





✓ We not only went shopping, but we watched a film as well.

إذا بدأت الجملة بـ Not only يستخدم بعدها صيغة سؤال

✓ Not only did we go shopping, but also we watched a film.





**Linking Words showing reason** 



because of owing to adi. + n due to noun on account of v + inq as a result of thanks to



- ✓ We didn't enjoy the day because the weather was cold.
  - = We didn't enjoy the day because of the cold weather.
- ✓ She loses her tools as she is careless.
  - = Due to her carelessness, she loses her tools.
    - بدلاً من جملة because يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بــ Being وبعدها الصفة ثم باقي الجملة
- = Being ill, he was absent. √ He was absent because he was ill.

جملة + is / was that غدملة + The reason

- √ He was absent because he was ill.
  - = The regson he was absent was that he was ill.



Linking Words showing result

بالتالي consequently / لذلك so لذلك that's why / therefore / thus / for this reason / as a result

- √ He was ill so he was absent.
- ✓ Jana didn't study well; therefore she didn't pass her exams.
- ✓ It was raining, that's why we didn't go out.
- √ He didn't arrive early; as a result he missed the bus.





Linking Words showing contrast



although/ though / even though / even if / whereas بالرغم من



- يأتوا في بداية الجملة أو بين الجملتين (بينهم تناقض)
- ✓ Although he is 70, he is energetic.
- ✓ Even though he is rich, he isn't happy.
- ترتيب الجمل مع although / though / even though حيث أن الحدث الغير متوقع يأتي في الجملة الثانية .
  - أحيانا تستخدم while بمعنى although:
  - ✓ While there was no evidence, they thought she committed this crime.





من الرغم من + n. / -ing / adj.+ n.

✓ Despite being 70, he is energetic.

✓ He isn't happy in spite of being rich.

In spite of the fact that Despite the fact that



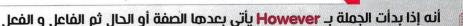
- ✓ In spite of the fact that He is 70. He is energetic.
- ✓ Despite the fact that he is rich, he isn't happy.

but / however / yet

✓ He is 70 but / , however / , yet he is energetic.

√ He is rich but / , however he isn't happy.





- √ However rich he is, he isn't happy.
- √ However hard he studied, he got low marks.



<u>a_allell releg</u> للصفّ الأول والثانئ والثالث الثانوى

#### **Giants' Gramma** فعل + فاعل + adi. or adv. + as ✓ Rich as he is, he isn't happy. ✓ Hard as he studied, he got low marks. فعل + فاعل + اسم Whatever √ Whatever wealth he has, he isn't happy. √ Whatever hardships he faced, he could win. Linking Words showing Purpose to / so as to / in order to +inf. √ Toka goes to school to learn. ✓ Jana studies hard in order to join an engineering faculty. in the hope of + v + ing√ Toka goes to school in the hope of learning. ✓ Jana studies hard in the hope of joining an engineering faculty. so that / in order to that / in the hope that will - may - can in order to that in the hope that would - might √ He studies hard so that he can get full marks. √ He studied hard so that he could get full marks. **Linking Words showing Time** 🗂 سبق دُراستهم في الازمنة past continuous past simple While ast simple past continuous V + ing عدم وحود فاعل ✓ While Seif was studying, his father came. ✓ While studying, Seif 's father came. √ While Seif was studying, his mother was cooking. √ While I was on holiday, my house was robbed. نُستخدم الماضي البسيط بعد while إذا كان الفعل to be √ After Seif had studied, he slept. √ After studying, Seif slept. √ Having studied, Seif slept. past simple Before past Perfe ✓ Before Seif slept, he had studied. √ Before sleeping, Seif had studied.



√ When he finished his study, he got a job as a teacher.

✓ On finishing his study, he got a job as a teacher.

When + فاعل + On + V + ing.

141



# Mark قيم نفسك Elementary Exercises

				Section of the sectio
	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1		nd the clock pa		
_		<b>b</b> in order to		d so that
2		eather, the match was p		
	@ Although	<b>b</b> Despite	© However	<b>d</b> Because
3	I've felt extremely ti	red today I wei	nt to bed early last r	night.
	<b>a</b> because	<b>b</b> however	© although	d so
4	studying ha	ard, we got low marks.		•
	a In spite of	<b>b</b> However	© Although	<b>d</b> Whatever
6	On the poli	ceman, the thief ran aw	<i>ı</i> ay.	_
No.	a to see	<b>b</b> seeing	© he saw	d saw
6	I repeated the lesso	on be sure that	the students under	stood.
	a so as to	<b>b</b> as to	© therefore	d so that
0	graduating	, he became a journalis	st.	
	After	<b>b</b> Although	© Despite	d In spite of
8	being very	tired, I continued work	ing.	,
	Even though	<b>b</b> Therefore	© As well	<b>d</b> Despite
0	He not only missed	his family but he	missed his old fri	ends.
	@ or	<b>b</b> also	© either	d as well
10	he got a go	od job, he was not hap	py.	
	<b>a</b> Because	<b>(b)</b> Although	© But	<b>d</b> Besides
10	he was at 0	Oxford, he wrote a few p	ooems.	_
	@ While	<b>(b)</b> Although	© Despite	d In spite of
12	hearing the	e good news, everyone	smiled and clapped	
		<b>b</b> When		<b>d So</b>
16	the boys ha	ad played football, they	had a shower.	
	@ While	<b>b</b> Because	© After	d Although
14	He was very unhap	py at school he	e was regularly bulli	ed.
		<b>b</b> although		d so
<b>de</b>		ter talking with		
	a after	<b>b</b> because	© but	<b>d</b> if
	> Fill in gap:			
16	really enjo	ying the book you lent	me, I haven't finishe	ed it yet.
16		ed, she worked overtin		
_		a now lives in E		
_	you say, I v		3	
			h homowork	
GC.		oed, Jana did his Englis	II HOIHEWOIK.	
	Find the mistake.	then correct it:		
20	After finished his h	omework, Seif watched	d TV.	[
20	Although hard she	studies, she doesn't ge	et full marks.	<u>[</u>
	Beside being cleve			[
		d friends, we don't mee		<u>[</u>
60	However I studied	hard, my grades were	not good.	<u>[</u>





	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
		exam you work		
	(a) if	<b>(b)</b> although	© without	d unless
2	writing his o	wn novels, he translated	d French and Italian	literature into Arabic
	a As well as	<b>(b)</b> Because of	© In addition	d In spite of
3	his old age	e, my uncle is very energ	jetic.	
4	@ Although	<b>b</b> Despite	© Because of	d In spite
4	being depr	essed, he's having trou	ble in school.	
A	a In addition	<b>b</b> Besides	© Beside	<b>d</b> Despite
6	He found it difficult	to concentrate	his worry about his	s grades.
4	<b>a</b> because	<u> </u>	© due to	<b>d</b> since
6	going to be	ed last night, I read a cha	apter of a book.	
4	@ But		© Before	<b>d</b> After
1	it rarely rai	ns in Egypt, some touris	sts bring umbrellas	with them.
4	@ But	•	© Although	<b>d</b> However
8	they saw th	ne road accident, the ca	rs drove more slow	∕ly.
	<b>a</b> 50	<b>b</b> Because	© When	<b>d</b> Although
E	After the re	eports, she saw a film.		
44	(a) typed	<b>b</b> had typed	<b>C</b> types	<b>d</b> typing
UU	He was depressed,	he went to see		
AA	@ as		© because	d so
UU	I stayed in my room	I was tired of s	peaking English all	the time.
	(a) so	(b) because	© but	d due to
UZ	It is my mother's bir	rtnaay soon, I w	ant to buy her a pro	esent.
44	© SO	<b>b</b> but	© because	<b>d</b> however
UE	Mohamed studies h	ard, he isn't get	tting good grades.	
aa	@ but	<b>b</b> because	© despite	d when
U	There's no airport in	n the city, there	's one about fifty m	iles away.
44	(a) However	<b>b</b> even though	<b>©</b> however	<b>d</b> besides
UE	While Al Daifi	on a holiday, he wrote	e two books.	
	(a) IS	<b>b</b> was being	© was	d had been
	Fill in gap:			
16	My father was ill,	he continued wor	kina.	
		tired, he could go for a r		
18	She decided to orde	er a salad now	she had started a d	iot
10	we ran fact	, we missed the train.	sile ilad stal ted a d	iet.
	Toka is both clever			
-	Find the mistake,			
21	The referee cancell	ed the match because t	he heavy rain.	[
2(2	Despite swimming i	s useful, I don't practise	e it.	[
2(3	While I was being yo	oung, I played football.		[]
2(4	The hotel was fully b	booked, but we stayed a	nt a guest house.	[
25	I went to school des	pite I was ill.	<u> </u>	[ 7



# Mark فيم نفسك Advanced Exercises

SHEET,		***************************************	_	
	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or o	<b>di</b>	
1		has, he bought a large '		
	<b>a</b> Whatever	<b>b</b> However	© Although	<b>d</b> Despite
2	Strong he is	s, he couldn't lift the cas	se.	
	(a) although		© despite	d so
3	He woke up very lat	te,he didn't cat	ch the train.	
	(a) although	<b>b</b> so	© because	
4	My father could hav	e taken you to the airpo	ort you didr	ı't ask him.
	@ so	<b>b</b> as well as	© and	d but
6		een him before, I knew	who he was.	
		<b>b</b> Although		<b>d</b> When
6	I've been feeling tire	ed all day, I'm g	joing to bed early to	onight.
	(a) because	<b>b</b> but	© SO	d though
1	Not only he	miss his family but he i	s also experiencing	ı culture shock.
	(a) has	(b) does	© had	d do
8	They told him he pa	ssed the test, h	ne didn't believe the	em.
	(a) despite	<b>b</b> due to	© but	d so
9	We enjoyed the foo	tball match the	dust storm.	
	(a) in spite	<b>b</b> in case	© despite	<b>d</b> because
10	We had to change t	he plans proble	ems we hadn't expe	cted.
	a owing to	<b>b</b> because	© although	d so as to
10	enjoying th	e novel you lent me, I h	aven't finished it ye	t
	a In spite	<b>b</b> As well as	© Despite	d Due to
12		as expensive, we enjoy		0 - 11
	_	<b>b</b> Even though		<b>d</b> Besides
13		ed, Saif did his homewo		
	@ went	<b>b</b> go	© gone	<b>d</b> going
14		pt, most tourists take p		(D) 14(L-1) -
44	Although	<b>b</b> Therefore		<b>d</b> While
(E		e newspaper th		(A) Although
	<b>©</b> \$0	<b>b</b> because	© but	<b>d</b> Although
	Fill in gap:			
16	getting up	early is advisable, mar	ny people get up lat	e.
16	the doctor	r's skill, he couldn't sav	e the patient's life.	
		ey fought; they had no		
10	_	e, he still runs the facto		
-		orm, we couldn't go sw		
90				
	Find the mistake,			
		, I arrived at the office	late.	[
20	Clever however he	is, he failed the exam.	alaaal	[
		as he was late for his s		[
		harmful, they can't giv		[
26	Neither Toka nor J	ana know how to swim.	•	L

144



## padg to Jeff ing. forms or the infinitive

decide	يقرر	refuse	ں فض ،	ي بعدها .to + inf seem	يدو " "
arrange		wish		volunteer	ي او تطوع
agree		threaten		tend	میل میل
expect		prove	یثبت / یبرهن یثبت / یبرهن		 قسم
hope	4	prepare		hurry	بسرع
learn	يتعلم	choose	- بختار	guarantee	<u>ِ</u> ضمن
offer	يعرض		يتظاهر	hesitate	بردد
plan	يخطط			seek	بسعي إلي
promise	يعد	deserve	يستحق		غشل
want		manage	يتمكن		
enjoy	يستمتع	appreciate	يُقدِر	resume	يستأنف
deny	ينكر	spend		ني بعدها فعل مضاف له [ resist	يقاوم
admit		postpone		put off	يساب يؤجل
avoid		fancy		delay	يوبن يۇخر
finish		imagine		miss	يو حر
practise		complete		necessitate	نحتم / يستلزم
suggest		involve		can't help	
dislike	يكره	include	يشمل	ع نفسه	لا يستطيع أن يمن
understan	يفهم d	risk	بخاطر	consider	يفكر في
rie daniin			· mad		
	ı for <b>not making</b> ı یکره	ِن اختلاف في المعني: like	<b>l apologize</b> for ک فعل مضاف له ing بدو یحب	يضاف له <b>ing</b> باستخدا not <mark>coming</mark> ear تي بعدها .to + inf أو continue	". الأفعال الآتية يأ يستمر
hate love	يكره المحادة ا	ين اختلاف في المعني: like prefer	l apologize for که ing بدو نحب ایمون یک که ایمون که ایمون که ایمون که ایمون که نمون که که کار	not <mark>coming</mark> ear أو تي بعدها .to + inf continue start (begin)	". الأفعال الآتية يا يستمر بيدا
Thank you hate love الكلام)	یکره   یحب دیث بشکل مخصص (وقت	ين اختلاف في المعني: like prefer ومع .to+ inf الع نة فانه يأتي بعد	I apologize for فعل مضاف نه ing بدو يحب يحب يفضل يفضل العديث بشكل عام ا	not <b>coming</b> ear أو to + inf. أو تي بعدها .to + inf continue start (begin) بسيط في العني إذا أخذت <b>g</b> و إذا استخدمنا vould	". الأفعال الأتية يأ يستمر يبدأ راختلافه
Thank you hate love الكلام)	يكره يعب ديث بشكل مخصص (وقت to + inf. له meet Mr Ahmed	ين اختلاف في العني: like prefer ومع to+ inf. الع فق فانه يأتي بعد ب	I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بدو يحب يحب يعضل يفضل يفضل الحديث بشكل عام السابة v قبل الأفعال السابة	not coming ear أو to + inf. أو to + inf. أو continue start (begin) إسيط في المعني إذا أخذت vould إذا استخدمنا f Mr Ahmed.	". الأفعال الآتية يأ يستمر يبدأ (اختلافه ولكن للحظ أنا
Thank you hate love الڪلام I'd love to	يكره يعب ديث بشكل مخصص (وقت to + inf. له meet Mr Ahmed	ين اختلاف في المعني: like prefer ومع to+ inf. الع قف فانه يأتي بعد، خ	ا apologize for ing بدو ing بدو يحب يحب يعضل يفضل المحديث بشكل عام ing v قبل الأفعال السابة I'd like to mee + to + V-ing	r not coming ear أو to + inf. أو to + inf. تي بعدها continue start (begin) و إذا استخدمنا vould أو t Mr Ahmed.	". الأفعال الأثية يأ يستمر يبدا (اختلافه ولكن للحظ أن
hate love الكلام) I'd love to	يكره يحب ريث بشكل مخصص (وقت to + inf. ه meet Mr Ahmed	ين اختلاف في المعني: like prefer ومع to+ inf. الع قف فانه يأتي بعد، خ	ا apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بدو ing بدو يحب يحب يفضل المحديث بشكل عام المالية vo قبل الأفعال السابة I'd like to mee - + to + V-ing TV.	r not coming ear أو to + inf. أو to + inf. تي بعدها continue start (begin) و إذا استخدمنا vould أو t Mr Ahmed. الآتية يأتي بعدها inf.	". الأفعال الأثية يأ يستمر يبدا (اختلافه ولكن للحظ أن
hate love الكلام I'd love to	یکرہ یحب دیث بشکل مخصص (وقت to + inf. اص meet Mr Ahmed Pret	ين اختلاف في العني: like prefer ومع .to+ inf. الحد ثق فانه يأتي بعد . fer + V-ing to watching	ا apologize for each ing بدو ing بدو ing بدو يحب يحب يغضل المحديث بشكل عام ing منافع المالية vo المالية المال	r not coming ear أو to + inf. أو to + inf. تي بعدها continue start (begin) و إذا استخدمنا vould أو t Mr Ahmed.	". الأفعال الأثية يأ يستمر يبدا (اختلافه ولكن للحظ أن
hate love الكلام  I'd love to	یکره پیت بشکل مخصص (وقت بیث بشکل مخصص (وقت بیث بشکل مخصص (وقت به meet Mr Ahmed Pref ing the internet	ين اختلاف في المعني: like prefer ومع to+ inf. ومع في أنه أنه أنه يأتي بعد في أنه يأتي بعد أنه أنه يأتي بعد أنه أنه المالية أنه	ا apologize for each ing بدو ing بدو ing بدو يحب يحب يغضل المحديث بشكل عام ing منافع المالية vo المالية المال	r not coming ear أو to + inf. أو to + inf. تي بعدها continue start (begin) و إذا استخدمنا vould أو t Mr Ahmed. الآتية يأتي بعدها inf.	". الأفعال الأثية يأ يستمر يبدا (اختلافه ولكن للحظ أن

ولكل طرسي اللغة الإنجليلية



(to + inf. في المجهول يأتي بعدهم make ﴿ الْأَدَا جَاءَ make أَلِي الْمُجْهُولُ يَأْتُى بِعَدُهُمُ الْمُجْهُولُ

✓ The teacher made Ali repeat his homework again.

⊙ الأفعال الآتية يمكن أن يأتي بعدها .to + inf أو فعل مضاف له ing مع وجود اختلاف في المعني:

<u> </u>	3,36		**************************************
stop	يتوقف	forget	ينسى
remember	يتذكر	regret	يأسف
try	يحاول / يجرب		
remember to +	infinitive	شيء (لم يفعله)	بتذكر أن بقوم بعمل

√ He remembered to call his friend.

يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه (فعله) remember + gerund

✓ He remembered watching this film.

ينسي أن يفعل شيئا (لم يفعله) forget to + infinitive

✓ Nadia forgot to close the gate.

forget + gerund فعله غله

✓ Nadia forgot reading the novel.

regret to + infinitive يشعر بالأسف لأن يقول أو يخبر شخص شيئا ما

✓ He regretted to say that my son was loser.

regret + gerund يشعر بالندم علي شيءِ حدث

✓ He regretted watching this play. It was boring.

try to + infinitive يحاول عمل شيء (وغالبا لا ينجح)

✓ The student tried to escape, but the headmaster caught him.

(يقوم بعمل شيء ليري نتيجته / يُجرب عمل شيء)

√ Try wearing this dress.

√ Try taking an aspirin.

يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئا stop to + infinitive

√ He stopped to smoke.

يتوقف عن عمل شيء stop + gerund

✓ He stopped smoking.

🗗 استخدام v + ing بعد to في التعبيرات الآتية:

due to	بسبب	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	take to	يعتاد علي
lead to	يؤدي إلى	thanks to	بفضل	be used to	معتاد
object to	يعارض علي	owing to	بسبب	get used to	يعتاد علي
look forward to	يتطلع إلي	be opposed to	معارض لـ	be accustomed to	معتاد علي

▼ يستخدم فعل مضاف له ing بعد التعبيرات الآتية

be busy	مشغول	can't stand	لا يحتمل	it's no good	لا فائدة من
don't mind	لا مانع	can't help	لا يتوقف عن	it's no use	لا فائدة من
feel like	يرغب/يريد	how about	ماذا عن	it's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
be worth	يستحق	what about	ماذا عن	it's a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت

✓ She has difficulty walking.

√ It's a waste of time surfing the internet.

✓ I feel like having a cold drink.

♦ أفعال يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم .to + inf في المعلوم و في حالة المبني للمجهول تأتي .to + inf بعد الفعل مباشرة

advise	ينصح	encourage	يشجع	order	يأمر
allow	يسمح	expect	يتوقع	permit	يسمح



		-			
ask	يطلب	promise	يعد	persuade	القنع
invite	يدعو	help	يساعد	force	يجبر
tell	يأمر	teach	يعلم	command	ىأم
choose	يختار	challenge	يتحدي	beg	يتوسل
require	يتطلب	want	يريد	instruct	يعطى توحيه
	**************	\$2000A8886A88A8A8A8A886000000000000000000	**************************		***

- ✓ I advised Ali to come to my birthday.
- ✓ Ali was advised to come to my birthday.

### Important Notes

و في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات التالية نستخدم .to + inf:

happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky / relieved / amazed.... + to inf.

✓ It is difficult for her to get up early.

✓ It was easy for Jana to study English.

to + inf. : في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات أدوات الاستفهام

how to + inf. / what / how to + inf. / where to + inf. ......

- √ I don't know how to go to the club.
- ✓ He is in a tight corner; he didn't know what to do.

الحظ الفرق بن :

#### Like / would like / feel like

- ✓ Seif likes to play (playing) football.
- ✓ Seif 'd like to play football.
- √ Seif feels like playing football.
- الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا شاهدنا أو سمعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها الفعل مضافا لـه ing ليـدل علي أننا سمعنا أو شاهدنا جزء من الحدث:

hear	يسمع	notice	يلاحظ
see	يري	watch	ىشاھد

√ heard Toka sing a song.

= I heard the whole song.

√ heard Toka singing a song.

= I heard part of the song.

the first .../ the second ..../ the last ...../ the next.....

- √ Ahmed was the first to get the high mark.
- √ Toka was the last to attend the meeting.

• يُستخدم المصدر بدون to بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

و استخدام .to + inf بعد الكلمات:

can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would

- ✓ They must attend the conference.
- ✓ She can run very quickly.
  - v فعل help يأتي بعده المصدر مع to أو بدون v
- √ Toka helped Jana do her homework.
- √ Toka helped Jana to do her homework.
  - ♦ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها ing في حالة عدم وجود مفعول، و يأتي بعدها .to + inf في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	forbid	يمنع	permit	يسمح
allow	يسمح	recommend	يوصى ب	encourage	بشجع

- √ I advise you to read this novel.
- √ My Parents allow us to sleep late.
- √ I advise reading this novel.
- √ My Parents allow sleeping late.





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c oı	r <b>d:</b>					
-		and put his pen down						
	@ writing	(b) to writing	©write	d to wr	ite			
2	On my way home 1s	stoppedAl-Ahı	ram Weekly as I enjoy	it.				
4	hought	<b>b</b> buying	© buy	d to bu	У			
8	I stoppedcom	ffee 2 years ago.	© 25/		•			
4	@ drink	b to drink	© drinking	d to dr	inkina			
	A knife is used to	meat	<u> </u>					
4	A Kille is used to	(b) cutting	© be cut	d being	a cut			
G	We are expected	<b>b</b> cuttinglate for the meet	ing today.					
4	he	(b) being	© to be	d been				
6	Mahor starts	Geology this year	<b>9.5</b> 25	0				
4	6 etudy	<ul><li>being</li><li>Geology this year.</li><li>to studying</li></ul>	© studvina	d studi	ed			
A	One of the hove adn	nitted the wind	dow.					
A	to break	(b) broke	© had broken	<b>d</b> brea	kina			
8	Would you like	<b>b</b> broke coffee or tea?	G	<u> </u>	<b>-</b>			
4	a drink	(b) to drink	© are drinking	d drink	ing			
O	My friend is forced	me in the exan	n	0	<b>3</b>			
4	to help	h heln	(c) helps	d help	na			
10	L rogretted h	er in public. It was ba	© helps ad for her.					
W.	@ Plame	<b>b</b> blaming	© to blame	d to bl	amina			
99	He denied th	nat bad thing. In fact, I	he was innocent.	<b></b>	<b>.</b>			
VV	@ to do	h did	(C) doing	d do				
16	Are you busy	<b>(b)</b> did this book?	<u> </u>	0				
46	Are you busy	(b) to read	© reading	d read	S			
16	Wo'd roally like	on holiday but we	e don't have enough m	onev.				
46	to going	(b) he going	© to go	d goin	q			
10	L can't imagine	in the city. I enjoy i	© to go its excitement and urk	an life.				
44	and living	<b>b</b> to live	© living	d live				
46	She spent too much	timein the ga	arden vesterdav.					
44	a played	(b) playing	© plays	d was	playing			
		e playing						
-	Fill in gap:	Å						
	A saw is used to							
16	Are you used to	up early?						
16	I remembered	her at a party once	e.					
	I suggest that you							
		football after h	e hurt his lea.					
40			o nartino log.					
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:						
2	I went to the party	yesterday, but I didn't	remember telling Ade	el about	my new car.			
		- NO.						
20	They made him pay	ring money back to th	em.		[			
		are giving me a heada			[			
20	On our way to Alex	, we stopped buying s	some fast food.		[			
2	If you don't stop to waste your time, I'll punish you.							



# Mark فقير نفسك Mark فيم نفسك

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:			
1	Do not forget	off the light before	you go out.	anne de manuelle con conserve de la		
		<b>b</b> to switch		d switched		
2		hea study pla				
		<b>b</b> to make		d make		
3	I remember	that funny man last ye	ear when he amused ι	us with his jokes		
	(a) to meet	<b>b</b> meet	© meeting	d had met		
4	I'm sure she intends	to Paris next	year.			
-	@ will travel	<b>b</b> to travel	© to travelling	d travel		
E	When I saw my frien	d, I stoppedh	ands with him.			
_		<b>b</b> shaking	© shake	d to shaking		
6	We all recommende					
4		<b>b</b> that he read		d to reading		
V		her friends at the par				
4	@ seeing	<b>b</b> to seeing	© to see	d see		
8		friends with suc				
4		<b>b</b> making		d to making		
<b>U</b>		p my father rather tha				
44	(a) watch	<b>b</b> to watch	© watching	d watched		
UU		pefore the meeting sta				
44		<b>b</b> to leave		d left		
UU		hings which make my	-			
46		<b>b</b> did	© doing	d do		
UC		esn't allowto s				
46	•	<b>b</b> coming	© came	<b>d</b> with coming		
UE		the best student in the		(A) to be chosen		
90	We decided	<b>b</b> choosing	C 10 choose	d to be chosen		
WW	a to stay		© to staying	d) stay		
16	Lhaven't finished	all my jobs yet.	C to staying	(d) Sidy		
44	(a) do		© to doing	d doing		
	Fill in gap:		<b>6</b> 10 00119			
16		the fearthy of arts?				
	_	the faculty of arts?				
		used toin the				
			d manner in which she	e had spoken.		
		friends with suc				
ZU	Please, remember	phone your fri	end.	***************************************		
	Find the mistake, t					
21	On my way home I s	topped buying a news	spaper.	[		
	I like to watching Inc		i	[		
		read the book I lent y		[		
		loing all the washing ι		[		
46	He felt exhausted as he has never been used to do such hard work.					



# A dvanced Exercises Mark

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:			
1	I'da visit to P	aris next year.				
	a like pay	<b>b</b> like to paying	© like paying	d like to pay		
2	I couldn't meet him a	as he was busy	the files in his comp	outer.		
		<b>b</b> arranging		<b>d</b> arranged		
3	I can't forget	. It was a painful expe	rience.			
	a to bully	<b>b</b> being bullied	© bully	<b>d</b> bullied		
4		eedsbefore yo				
		<b>b</b> be checked		d checked		
6		go out thana				
		<b>b</b> stays	<b>©</b> staying	<b>d</b> stayed		
6	Ali was the first					
	@ read	<b>b</b> reading	© to read	d has read		
7		a fine for driving his		_		
	a to pay	(b) pay	© paying	<b>d</b> paid		
8		my school eve	ery morning.			
_	@ of	<b>b</b> about	© with	<b>d</b> to		
9		at man when I was ni				
44		<b>b</b> met		<b>d</b> meeting		
10			ng the summer vacation			
	(a) taking		<b>©</b> takes	d be take		
00	Never stop I					
44		<b>b</b> to eating		d eat		
12	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		one clapped their han	ds.		
44		<b>b</b> to sing	© is singing	<b>d</b> sings		
13	We choseby					
44		<b>b</b> on travel		d to travel		
14		the new art e				
44	a to see	<b>b</b> to be seen	<b>C</b> seeing	d to seeing		
15		this team. He t				
	@ joins	<b>b</b> join	© to join	<b>d</b> joined		
	Fill in gap:					
16	Many people in our	town to build	the new bridge.			
	• • •	me to practise	_			
-		betic, he can't help				
	_	100	the members of the f	amily		
			e he went out. He is s			
20			e lie wellt out. He is s	ure.		
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:				
		•	e forgot locking the fro			
44	_		om his classmate's ba	ıg. []		
44		e for not wearing the		[]		
		eport with me, so I had		[]		
25	You should try to go up in a balloon. You'd really love it.					



### التسني والنعر

## **Wishing and regret**

### I wish / If only

عن موقف غير حقيقي في المضارع ( امنية في المضارع)	ستخدم الماضي البسيط بعد wish / If only التعيير
□ I wish I knew what to do about the problem	n. (I don't know)
✓ I wish you didn't have to go so soon.	(You have to go)
✓ Do you wish you lived near the sea?	(You don't live near the sea.)
✓ I wish I knew where I put my keys.	(I don't know where I put my keys.)
	(I am short.)
✓ I wish you had a car. ✓ If only I lived an exciting life.	(You don't have a car.)
	(I don't live an exciting life. )
Jana wishes she didn't have to work hard.	
	🕜 يستخدم الماضي التام بعد Wish / If only في حالة الا
I wish I'd known about the party. I would he was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't	nave gone if I'd known. (I didn't know.)
「✓ It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't	said it. (I said it)
✓ I wish I had applied for that job.	(I didn't apply for that job.)
✓ I wish I had met Jana before.	(I didn't meet Jana before.)
✓ I wish I had studied hard last year. ✓ If only Toka hadn't failed the English test.	(I didn't study hard last year.)
✓ If only Toka hadn't failed the English test.	(Toka failed the English test.)
Ali's going on a trip to Alex soon. I wish I	
If only I hadn't eaten so much cake yester	
ا تعتبرات متساوين مع حالات <b>if</b> الثانية و الثالثة :	wish / If only للحظ في حالة وجود جملتين بعد
✓ I wish I hadn't wasted all my money. I would	d have bought a car.
✓ If only she hadn't complained to the manag	jer, everything would have been all right
I wish I could have (done something) = I regre	et that I could not do it:
✓ I hear the party was great. I wish I could be	
she / he / you / they / مع / would ويستخدم (l - we)	و في حالة التعبير عن المستقبل تستخدم .could+ inf مع
يدم would للتعبير عن الشكوى	it أو يمكننا استخدم could للتعبير عن المقدرة و تستخ
√ I wish I could read quickly.  ✓ If or	only I <b>could</b> drive a car.
➡ We often use I wish would to complain about	out a situation:
√ The phone has been ringing for five minu	tes. I wish someone would answer it.
✓ I wish you'd do something instead of just s	sitting and doing nothing.
Compare	THE STATE OF THE S
<b>○</b> We use I wish would to say that we	want something to happen. But we do
not use I wish would to say how we	그는 그를 가지 않아 되었다. 그를 다른 사람들은 그를 가지 않아 없는 것이 없었다. 그를 다른 사람들은 그를 다른 사람들은 사람들은 그를 다른 사람들이 그를
✓ I wish Sarah would come.	(= I want her to come)
but I wish Sarah was (or were) here now.	(NOT I wish Sarah would be)
✓ I wish somebody would buy me a car.	
but I wish I had a car.	(NOT I wish I would have)
We use I wish _ wouldn't _ to complain a	

✓ I wish you wouldn't keep interrupting me.

(= please don't interrupt me)



Important Notes 🧊 في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد wish يأتي بعدها 📹 + to بمعني يريد

wish to + inf. = want to

- √ I wish to see the principal, please.
- √ Toka wishes to achieve her goals.

📋 في حالة وجود ضمير او اسم بعد wish يأتي بعدها اسم

wish ... + n. (wish someone something)

√ I wish Jana a happy life.

- √ I wish you a speedy recovery.
- ✓ I wish you all the best in the future.
- √ I saw Mark before the exam and he wished me good luck.

### hope

ألا تختلف hope عن wish في حالة وجود hope نستخدم في الجملة التالية لها مضارع بسيط او مستقبل بسيط أو

hope + فاعل + future simple / present simple

✓ I hope Toka becomes an engineer.

✓ I hope Toka will become an engineer.

Compare.

I wish and I hope:

- √ I wish you a pleasant stay here.
- √ I hope you have a pleasant stay here.

(NOT I wish you have)

### regret

- 📋 يمكننا استخدام regret للتعبير عن الندم ويأتي بعدها v+ing
- to+inf.وتستخدم للتعبير عن الأسف في المضارع ويأتي بعدها

regret + v + ing يندم علي regret + to + inf. ياسف على

- ⇒ I regret doing something = I did it and now I'm sorry about it:
  - ✓ I now regret saying what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
  - ✓ Do you regret not going to college?
- ⇒ I regret to say / to tell you / to inform you (= I'm sorry that I have to say....etc.).
  - √ We regret to inform you that your application has been unsuccessful.

= I am sorry to tell you that your son is a loser.

- √ I regret to tell you that your son is a loser.
  - = I am sorry to tell you that your son is a loser.

🧻 في حالة وجود فعل مضاف له ing بعد regret نستخدم الماضي التام بعد l wish للتعبير عن الندم

- ✓ I regret not studying hard.
- = I wish I had studied hard.
- ✓ I regret wasting my time last year.
- = I wish I hadn't wasted my time last year.



**Wise Saying** 

ا never dream of success. I worked for it لم أحلم يوماً بالنجاح ، بل عملت لتحقيقه





	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	I wish Igo to the	e stadium tomorrow.		
	@ can	<b>b</b> could	© will	<b>d</b> may
2	Ihe would atter	nd the next meeting.		
	@ wish	<b>b</b> hope	© eager	d want
3	I wish I on a de	sert island; it's my dea	arest dream.	
	a had lived	<b>b</b> could live	© will live	d will have lived
4	If only Ihigh ma	irks last exam.		
	@ had had	<b>b</b> have had	© have	<b>d</b> had
6	I wish she m	e!		
_	@ loved	<b>b</b> love	© loves	d will love
6	If only I it wa	as so easy!		
_	a had known	<b>b</b> knew	© would know	<b>d</b> know
7	If only I here	yesterday, the accid	ent wouldn't have hap	opened.
20	(a) had been	<b>b</b> was	© were	d would be
8	That music! I wish th	ney it down!		
	@ would turn	<b>b</b> turn	© could turn	d have turned
9	I wish we that	at old car of yours.		
44	@ bought	<b>b</b> hadn't bought	© didn't buy @	wouldn't have bought
10	If only she m	ny advice, things woul	d have been better.	
44		<b>b</b> would take	© took	d had taken
00		during the summer he	oliday last year.	
44	a could go	<b>b</b> would go	© went	d had gone
12	If only my wife	here. It's a pity she	won't come back till	tomorrow.
44	a has been	<b>b</b> would be	© were	d will be
13		er when I had the time		
44	@ would work	<b>b</b> have worked	© will work	d had worked
14		oney. I wish Ir	nuch money now.	
44	@ earn	<b>b</b> had earned		d earns
UE		to having a new car. S		
		(b) could	© would	d must
-	Fill in gap:			
16	I wish I the a	answer to that questic	on.	
17	I wish I know	v how to play the guita	ar!	
	I wish she m			
		ed a little more last sp	orina	
	I wish I taller		ning.	
and the con-				***************************************
	Find the mistake, t			
66	live very tar trom m	y office. I wish I will be	e nearer.	[]
44 66	Jana wishes she will	sing well.	i	[]
60	If only I aren't short.	والمعطا ومرايين	a bianan arrat	[]
26	It's a nity you said th	all. If only we had had at. If only you have ke	a pigger one!	[]
-	THE STREET WILLIAM STREET	~ ~ · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		





	> Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c oı	d:		
1	If only I mor	e time for my hobbies	s but I don't.		
	(a) have	<b>b</b> has	© had	d am	
2	I wish you ir	the summer, if possi	ble.		
	a to visit	<b>b</b> visiting	© could visit	<b>d</b> had visited	
3	I wish I my t	ime in the holidays.			
	a wouldn't waste	_	© had wasted	<b>d</b> hadn't wasted	
4	I wish he hadn't sold	l his car week	۲.		
	@ last	<b>b</b> next	© <b>a</b>	<b>d</b> every	
E	He wishes he	his PHD next month	١.		
	a would get	<b>b</b> will get	© gets	d had got	
6	I'm sorry, I didn't bri	ng my camera. I wish	I it.		
		<b>b</b> had brought		d could bring	
7		g football in the stree	t. If only I don		
	(a) had	<b>b</b> hadn't		d couldn't	
8		I'd have got high mar			
_	•	<b>b</b> have answered		d answer	
9	_	ny advice, things wou			
44		<b>b</b> has taken	•	d would take	
10		e wedding, but I was i			
44	@ would	<b>b</b> could	© were	d had been	
QQ	I feel sick. I wish I			<b>(1)</b>	
44			© wouldn't have eate		
UZ			an't. If only he		
44	@ will	(b) could	© can	_	
<b>UE</b>	It's a pity she didn't	go to the wedding pai	rty. She wished she	there.	
44			© will go		
UG			out unfortunately I do.	d won't	
44	0	<b>b</b> didn't		Q WOITI	
UC		ible. I wish it	c stops	d) will stop	
	@ would stop	Dsiobbea	Csiops	Q Will Slop	
44	Fill in gap:				
		ends. I wish so			
		he first prize next tim	e.		
	If only he wi		wish she some		
			wish she come	<b>;</b> .	
QU		r, I would play basketl	yalı.		
	Find the mistake,				
	I wish I can meet yo			[	
	, ,	enjoyable. I wish you	had had with us.	[	
_	It was too late. I wis		'	[	
		ou before I bought the		[	
46	I wish I had known v	where I left my jacket.		L	





# Advanced Exercises Mark 25

	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1	I wish yousmok	king. I'm sure you will	have better health.			
	@ stop	<b>b</b> will stop	© would stop	d have stopped		
2	I wish she this ca	ar; it has caused her	a lot of trouble.			
	@ doesn't buy	<b>b</b> won't buy	© didn't buy	d hadn't bought		
3	He wishes he hadn't	neglected his work.	This means that he ac	tually his work.		
	a can't have neglected		<b>b</b> is still neglecting	•		
4	© neglected		d had not neglected			
4		moke; I wish I sm				
4		<b>b</b> wouldn't start	© didn't start	d can't start		
6	I wish I a pilot w			_		
4			© were	d had been		
6		ny wife a gold armlet				
6	•		© had	<b>d</b> could		
7	Iyou will come to					
6			© wash	d wish		
0	He regretted not atte	ending yesterday's mo	eeting. He wished he			
0			© was	d had been		
<b>u</b>	a will revise	well for the last exan	n; she couldn't answe	r many questions.		
40	She wishes to		© hadn't revised	d had revised		
WW.			@ woro	A would be		
11			© were 't comfortable. He wis	d would be		
44	a) had travelled	<b>b</b> would travel		d) has travelled		
12	0	a lot of money whe		d ilds ildvelled		
44	a could save	<b>b</b> will have saved	Saved	d had saved		
16			upon his useful a			
				d had acted		
14	0	neer. Really, I ar				
				d) must be		
15	You shouldn't have m		vish you making t	that mistake.		
	a will avoid	<b>b</b> avoided	© have avoided	d had avoided		
	> Fill in gap:					
		something I was real	ly interested in			
10	I'd like to give up smo	oking but I can't. If on	ly I give it up.			
18	I wish the school holi	davs longer.	.y · · · · · · · · · · · · givo ic up.			
		soon. I wish he	do that.			
20	I was very cold. I wisl	h it warmer.				
			careful: two children	were injured. []		
20	I wish to were a polic	emani	careiui, two crilluren	were injured. []		
		drive, I would have g	ot a licence	[]		
20	It's starting to snow	I wish I were my coat		[]		
26	It's starting to snow, I wish I were my coat.  regretted not seeing her off at the airport. I wish I did so.					



### Causative

لاحظ الفرق بين

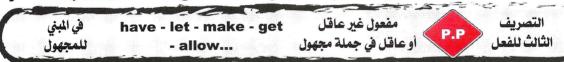
ا cleaned my room.
ا had (got) my room cleaned.
ا had (got) my room cleaned.

مصدر inf. مفعول عاقل have - let - make في المبني للمعلوم بدون to

- √ The teacher had us do some extra work today.
- √ Toka let Jana play with her.
- ✓ Jana makes Toka do her homework before sleeping.

get - allow - force - في المبني للمعلوم cause - permit

- ✓ AI Daifi got Seif to go with him to the club.
- √ The bright light caused her to blink.
- ✓ The doctor allowed the patient to eat anything.
- ✓ I forced my daughters to sleep early.
- ✓ My father permits me to go out at night every Friday.



- ✓ I have my hair cut.
- ✓ I had my teeth checked yesterday.
- ✓ Mona made Mai hit by her teacher.
- √ We always get our clothes washed.
- √ Ali is getting his car repaired.
- √ Mai had the roof repaired yesterday.

Important Notes

• We use have something done to say that we arrange for somebody else to do something for us.

Compare

✓ Jana repaired the roof. (= she repaired it herself)
Jana had the roof repaired.

(= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)

- √ "Did you make those curtains yourself?"
  - "Yes, I enjoy making things."
  - "Did you have those curtains made?"
  - "No, I made them myself."
- We use have something done as a replacement to the passive.
  - ✓ Ali had their bags stolen while he was travelling.
     ✓ Ahmed had his nose broken in a fight.
     "His bags were stolen."
     "His nose was broken."
- ✓ Ahmed had his nose broken in a fight. "His nose w
   ⇒ We can use "get something done" instead of "have something done":
  - √ When are you going to get the roof repaired? (= have the roof repaired)
    - √ I think you should get your hair cut really short.

**قواعد العمالقـــق** للصف الأول والثانى والثالث الثانوم



have have	object	past participle
Lisa had	the roof	repaired yesterday.
Where did you have	your hair	cut?
Your hair looks nice. Have you had	it	cut?
Our neighbour has just had	a garage	built.
We are having	the house	painted this week.
How often do you have	your car	serviced?
I think you should have	that coat	cleaned.
I don't like having	my picture	taken.



- و للحظ صيغة السؤال والإجابة مع causative
- ✓ Do you usually get your room cleaned?
  - SNo, I clean it myself.
- ✓ Did you have your meal prepared?
  - No, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.
    - causative للحظ صيغة النفي و الأمر مع
- ✓ I won't get my room tidied. I'll tidy it by myself.
- ✓ Get your hair cut! It's too long.

🗐 يمكن استخدام causative في كل الأزمنة كما يلي.

	active	► She has her teacher explain the lesson.
مضارع بسيط	douve	► She gets her teacher to explain the lesson.
	passive	► She has (gets) the lesson explained.
3		► She is having her teacher explain the lesson.
مضارع مستمر	active	► She is getting her teacher to explain the lesson.
	passive	► She is having (is getting) the lesson explained.
		► She has had her teacher explain the lesson.
مضارع تام	active	► She has got her teacher to explain the lesson.
	passive	► She has had (has got) the lesson explained.
	active	► She had her teacher explain the lesson.
ماضي بسيط		► She got her teacher to explain the lesson.
	passive	► She had (got) the lesson explained.
	active	► She was having her teacher explain the lesson.
ماضي مستمر		► She was getting her teacher to explain the lesson.
	passive	► She was having (was getting) the lesson explained.
0	Approximate the second	► She had had her teacher explain the lesson.
ماضی تام	active	► She had got her teacher to explain the lesson.
	passive	► She had had (had got) the lesson explained.
		► She will have her teacher explain the lesson.
مستقبل بسيط	active	► She will get her teacher to explain the lesson.
	passive	► She will have (will get) the lesson explained.

GIANTS

Wise Saying Do it with passion, or not at all إما أن تقوم بما تحب ، أو لا تقم به على الإطلاق





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
1	You should get your	r blood pressure	from time to time.		
_	@ measure	<b>b</b> to measure		<b>@</b> m	easuring
2		nic to have			
_	<b>a</b> repaired my car	<b>b</b> my car repaired	© my car repair	<b>d</b> m	y car repairs
8		enter the fron	t door of my house.		
4	@ fix	<b>b</b> fixed	© to fix	d be	e fixed
4	I had my teeth			_	
a	@ checked	(b) check	© to check	d ch	ecks
e	I had my dentist	my teeth.			
G	© checks		© checked	d to	check
U	I will have my car				• •
6	The examinar made	<b>b</b> cooked	© trekked	(d) bi	Hen
Y	Showing	(Sabana	ation in order to be a		
R	Vostorday the robb	ersthe staff lie	© to show	(d) sh	owed
		<b>bgot</b>			lawad
0	What made you	it 2	© have		lowed
		<b>b</b> to do	© doing	<b>d</b> ) <b>d</b> (	
10	You should have you	ır visabefore it	evnires	w ac	ne
	(a) extended	<b>b</b> to extend	© he extended	(d) to	be extended
00	If you don't get out o	of my house, I'll have y	OII		De exicilaca
	(a) to arrest	<b>b</b> arresting	© arrested	d he	arrested
	got my friend		9 411 551 54		, air 1 3 3 1 3 4
	(a) to drive	<b>b</b> driving	© drive	d dr	iven
13	I don't know if my bo	ss will let me th	ne day off.		
	@ took	<b>b</b> to take		d ta	ken
14	I had my friend	me to the airport.			
	(a) to drive	<b>b</b> driving	© drive	d dr	iven
		living room because			
	a having it decorate		<b>b</b> having decorated i	t	
	© having it decorate		d having decorate it		
7	Fill in gap:				
16	Our neighbour	his child kidnappe	ed yesterday.		
99	Why don't you have	a mechanica	t your car?		
18	His wife him	to stop drinking last	year.		
90	Instead of buying a r	new pair of shoes, I $\dots$	my old ones rep	paired	l.
WEST STORY	We'll get Jana			***************************************	
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:			
21	He had us to cut our	hair.			[]
22	Mother had Jana tidi	ed her room before s			[
23	I got my car checked	d at the garage once a	a month.		[]
24	Every six months, I h	ave my eyes test by t	he oculist.		[]
26	I don't think I can ge	t Ali agree to this sug	gestion.		[]







	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	I usually or	nce a month.		
	@ make my hair	<b>b</b> have cut my hair	© get my hair	d have my hair cut
2	If you ask nicely, Mo	ther will probably	a piece of cake.	
	@let you have	<b>b</b> get you to have	Cmake you have	dto let you have
3	What makes me	all the time, stuffs	up my nose?	
	@cough	<b>b</b> to cough	Ccoughing	<b>d</b> coughs
4	Would you approve	if I had this article	?	
	@to be copied	<b>b</b> to copy	©been copied	<b>d</b> copied
E	My son was made	the windows befo	ore he could go outsic	le to play.
			Cto wash	
6			He is a conscientious	
_			Cnot waste	dwaste
7		service station to ha		
_			Cto fill	
8	Seif really wanted a	dog, but his parents	wouldn'thim ha	ave a pet.
	@let	<b>b</b> get	<b>C</b> permit	dallow
9	I'm afraid Jana	her visa applicat	ion refused.	
	a has got	<b>b</b> have	© has	d get
10	I had a hard time	his house.		
	@find	<b>b</b> to find	<b>C</b> found	<b>d</b> finding
10	The government TV	commercials are tryi	ng to get people	smoking.
	<b>a</b> to stopping	<b>b</b> to stop	Cstop	<b>d</b> stopped
12	Don't let yourself	•••••		
	<b>a</b> cheated	<b>b</b> cheating	© be cheated	<b>d</b> being cheated
13	Diane thinks televisi	on is a waste of time,	so she won'the	er children watch TV.
	allow			<b>d</b> have
14	I Jana to lend	me some money, so	I could go to a movie I	ast night.
	@am having		Chad	dam getting
16	The farmer	by the vet.		
	a had checked his t	norse	<b>b</b> had his horse chee	cked
	© get checked his ho		d had checked his h	orse
	> Fill in gap:			
16		to his homew	ork done by his class	mate
		by my doctor last r		
			istory books at schoo	1
		you go to the pa		•
		the river to get pol		
40			INOVA	and the second s
	Find the mistake,			
	All stores must hav			[]
		n sink checked, at six		[]
			ne servants did that fo	
		•	e stolen this morning	. []
26	We're aging to get a	maid help us at home	P	r 1



## **Giants' Grammar**

### so - such - too - enough

o صفة / حال (فقط بدون اسم) عداً

- ☐ ✓ I didn't like the book. The story was so stupid.
- □ ✓ I like Jana and Toka. They are so nice.
  - ✓ It's a beautiful day, isn't it? It's so warm.



- √ The book was so good that I couldn't put it down.
- I was so tired that I fell asleep in the armchair.
- [ ✓ It was so old a car that we couldn't buy it.
  - ✓ I have so many toys that you can share me.
- We usually leave out that:

✓ I was so tired I fell asleep.

لاحظ أن يمكننا حذف that

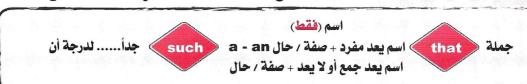
يتم استخدامها لتقوية المعنى

.... so + (many - few - much - little) + noun

- It was so hot so I drunk so much water.
  - √ I have so many books in my library.



- ✓ I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story.
- ✓ I like Liz and Joe. They are such nice people.
- ✓ It was a great holiday. We had such a good time.



- ✓ It was such a useful book that Farouk read it twice.
- ✓ We are such clever boys that we can get the high marks.
- ✓ It is such expensive furniture that we can't afford buying it.
- ✓ It was such nice weather that we spent the whole day on the beach.
- We usually leave out that:
  - ✓ It was such nice weather we spent the whole day on the beach.

يمكننا استخدام

اسم + such

- ✓ You mustn't trust her as she is such a liar.
- √ You always think good things are going to happen. You're such an optimist.



كننا استخداد

ن صفة / حال (too جدأ

- √ He has suffered a mild heart attack nothing too serious.
- ✓ Don't come too near me you might catch my cold.
- ✓ If we all work together, it shouldn't take too long.

صفة / حال (سلبي) دون الم / ضمير مفعول for) صفة / حال (اسم / ضمير مفعول عول الله / صفة / حال الله / صفة / حال الله / ضمير مفعول الله / صفة / حال الله / صفة / صفة / حال الله / صفة / حال الله / صفة / صفة

- ✓ Let's get a taxi. It's too far to walk home from here.
- ✓ She's too young to have a driving licence.
- √ The pool is too deep to swim in.
- √ The coffee was too hot for Al Daifi to drink.

aifi to drink. کننا استخدام too much + اسم

√ This project cost us too much money.

enough صفة / حال بدرجة كافية أن enough صفة / حال الم/ضمير مفعول enough for صفة / حال

- ✓ Ali is clever enough to answer the difficult questions.
- √ I am sure he will run quickly enough.

enough + (اسم (یعد / لا یعد)

- ✓ I don't have enough money.
  ✓ She doesn't have enough tickets for all of us.
- ✓ I can't run very far. I don't have enough energy.
- We also use enough alone (without a noun):
- ✓ We don't need to stop for petrol. We've got enough.

### **Important Notes**

so long	☐ I haven't seen her for so long.	
such a long time	I haven't seen her for such a long time. (not so long time)	
so far	⇒ I didn't know it was so far.	
such a long way	long way Dididn't know it was such a long way.	
so much, so many   1'm sorry I'm late – there was so much traffic.		
such a lot (of)	l'm sorry l'm late – there was such a lot of traffic.	

### Compare

too ... and not .... enough:

✓ You never stop working. You work too hard.

(= more than is necessary)

√ You're lazy. You don't work hard enough.

(= less than is necessary)

### Notice

- ✓ The food was very hot. We couldn't eat it.
  - = The food was so hot that we couldn't eat it.
  - = The food was too hot to eat.

(without it)

إذا جاءت so بداية الجملة نستخدم بعدها صيغة سؤال

....جملة..... that + فاعل + فعل مساعد+ صفة / حال So

- ✓ So dark was if that we could hardly see.
- ✓ So lazy is he that he never helps out with the housework.





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c oı	, d:	
1	***************************************			
W.		k. The story was <b>(b)such</b>		d enough
6	(0)so	<b>bsuch</b> morrow. Is that soon		d enough
4	(a)so			d enough
3	This question is too			d enough
			© to be answered	d to answering
4			the whole day on the	
-	(a)so	<b>bsuch</b>		d such an
6	I didn't realise it was		@ 33311 U	G coon an
			© old house	dan old house
6		fast on these roa		
	<b>O</b> SO			d so a
7	It was horribl	e weather that we sta	yed in.	
	<b>@so</b>	<b>b</b> such		d so much
8	The student found t	he exam easy	to answer well.	
		<b>b</b> such		d too
9		. to have a driving lice		
44		<b>bso</b>		d too
10		_	e there weren't	_
44			© too	
			at he could not see th	
44		<b>b</b> such		<b>d</b> too
UZ		mbed that he		
46		<b>b</b> so high		d so highly
<b>U</b> E		at his father decided t		(A) ha habawad
90		<b>b</b> does he behave		d he behaved
UC		erful film I wa		(d) that
46	(a) there	il information that we	© then	w mai
<b>V</b> E		<b>b</b> such <b>a</b>		(d) too
		<b>Socii</b> d	Coucii	<b>(4)</b>
	Fill in gap:		1 = 1 =	
	•	realise it was		
		hard. She looks		
25-11-12-12			n't know what to do w	ith it.
		iey're nice pe	-	
20	The weather is beau	ıtiful, isn't it? I didn't e	expect it to be	nice day.
	Find the mistake, 1	hen correct it:		
			n! I hope I am in his sh	oes! [
	9	. It was too a stupid s	•	[
44		that I had two cups.	<b>,</b>	[
	It was so a beautiful			[
25	She's very pretty. SI	ne's got such a beauti	iful eyes.	[





# 2 Intermediate Exercises المعاملة على المعاملة على المعاملة المعا

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
1	We don't have	money to go on ho	oliday right now.	nonconnouncement	
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Ctoo	denough	
2	The book was so	that I couldn't p	ut it down.		
	@good	<b>b</b> a good	Cwill	da well	
3	I can't run very far. I	don't have e	nergy.		
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Ctoo	denough	
4	I'm sorry I'm late - t	here was mu	ch traffic.		
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Cto	denough	
6	I'm sorry I'm late - t	here wasa lo	ot of traffic.		
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Ctoo	denough	
6	You never stop wor	king. You work			
	@hard so	<b>b</b> such hard	Ctoo hard	<b>d</b> hard enough	
7	I can't run very far. I	'm not			
_	@such fit	<b>b</b> fit too	Cfit enough	denough fit	
8	The box was too hea	avy for me by	myself.		
_	<b>1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1</b>		Clift	dlifting	
9	They had six childre	en. They hadn't exped	cted to have		
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Cso many	dso much	
10	There were	people.			
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Cso many	dso much	
00	She isorganized	that if you enter her	room, you'll find eve	rything in its place.	
	@so good	<b>b</b> such	Cso well	denough	
12	You are to blame. Y	ou didn't train	to win that game.		
		<b>b</b> hard enough		d such hard	
13	I can't walk	to keep up with you.			
	(a) too fast	<b>b</b> fast enough	© so fast	d such fast	
14	It was hot v	veather that we turne	d on the air condition	ing.	
	a such a	<b>b</b> so	<b>© such</b>	d too	
16	English language ta	kes patience	to learn it properly.		
	@so	<b>b</b> enough	Ctoo	dsuch	
	Fill in gap:				
16	I didn't realise you l	ived long way	from the city centre.	***************************************	
			shame you couldn't		
			eep while I was watch		
		expensive these da		9	
<b>UU</b>		od. He wears	nice ciotnes.		
	Find the mistake, t				
			e speaks enough qui	e <b>tly. [</b> ]	
		y. We had such good		[]	
		he looked too well af		[]	
		e news. It was enough	n shock.	[]	
25	The food at the hotel was such awful.				

ولكل دارسي الكثة الإجليزية



### Modal verbs

Giving Advice: Should & Shouldn't

أسداء النصح

- 🗐 نستخدم should / shouldnt للنصيحة لنقول أن شيء ما جيداً (بنبغي فعله) أو غير جيد (لا بنبغي فعله).
  - اً عد should / shouldnt بأتى الفعل في المصدر (بدون اي اضافات و بدون to).
    - أ تأتى should / shouldnt مع جميع الضمائر و الأسماء سواء كانت مفرد او جمع.
- You should always wash your hands after you've touched the cat.
- Tourists should wear sun cream when it's very hot.
  - You shouldn't walk too much in the sun.
  - ✓ You shouldn't touch that. It's dirty!
  - In summer, tourists should wear a hat and ought not to sit in the sun.
    - 🖠 يتكون السؤال بهل كالآتى: (و يكون وعناه " هل يجب ...؟ )

?..تكملة الحملة ...... + مصدر + فاعل + Should

Should you go to school every day?

Yes, I should.

Soon of Shouldn't.

Shoul

🗐 ىتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتى:

should / shouldn't + subject + verb......?

✓ What should I try doing?

You should definitely try some windsurfing.

🖆 للحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالأتى:

should / shouldn't + be + P.P ......

- You should eat a lot of vegetables and fruits as they are healthy.
- ✓ A lot of vegetables and fruits should be eaten as they are healthy. (Passive)
  - هناك بعض المصطلحات الأخرى التي نستخدمها في النصح و التي تحل محل

#### should

You ought to + inf.

If I were you, I would + inf.

I advise you to + inf.

My advice to you is to + inf.

You had better + inf.

It is better to + inf.

It is advisable for you to + inf.

It is desirable for you to + inf.

It is important for... to + inf.

It will be a good idea to + inf.

shouldn't

You ought not to + inf.

If I were you, I wouldn't+ inf.

I advise you not to + inf.

My advice to you is not to + inf.

You'd better not + inf.

It is better not to + inf.

It is unadvisable for you to + inf.

It is undesirable for you to + inf.

It is important for.... not to + inf.

It will be a good idea not to + inf.

### **Modal verbs of regret (blame)**

- نستخدم ought to (ought not to) have + P.P وأ should (shouldn't) have + P.P ينستخدم اللوم أو الندم لفعل أو عدم فعل شيء في الماضي
  - √ You shouldn't have arrived late for your exam.
  - √ I'm sorry! I ought to have come on time.
  - √ You shouldn't have wasted your time.



### **Obligation & Necessity**

- نُسْتَخْدُم must / mustn't للتَّعْسُر عُنْ (اللزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم).
- 🧻 بعد must / mustnt يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون اي اضافات وبدون
- أ تأتى must / mustnt مع جميع الضمائر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو جمع.
  - للحظ استخدامات:

(القواعد و القوانين)

(الزام شخصي)

(مشاعر قوية)

(دعوة قوية)

(نصحة قوية)

#### must / mustn't + inf.

- √ You must leave your bins outside today.
- ✓ I must work hard for the exams next week.
- ✓ I must buy a present for my mother.
- √ You must come to my party tonight.
- ✓ They mustn't eat that cheese. It's green! → You must stop smoking.
- √ We must buy souvenirs for our friends here.

(تذكرة بفعل شيء)

يتكون السؤال بهل كالآتي: (و ي<mark>كون معناه " هل يجب ...؟ )</mark>

?...تكملة الجملة ......+ مصدر + فأعل + Must

√ Must I turn right here?

Yes, you must.

No, I mustn't.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتي:

+ must / mustn't + subject + verb.....?

✓ What must I do to avoid traffic fines?

You must stick to the rules.

للحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالأتى:

+ must / mustn't + be + P.P .....

✓ I must buy a present for my mother.

(active)

✓ A present for my mother must be bought.

(Passive)

🗐 يمكننا استبدال **must** بالتعبيرات التالية:



- √ You must turn right.
- √ It is necessary for you to turn right.
- √ It is obligatory for you to turn right.
- √ It is a necessity for you to turn right.
- ✓ It is a must for you to turn right.
- √ You must turn right.
- ✓ It is a must for you to turn right.
- √ You must turn right.
- ✓ It is a must for you to turn right.

🗐 للحظ الفرق بين **must** و **a must**:

(فعل مساعد بمعني يجب ويأتي بعده المصدر)

(اسم بمعنی ضرورة )

a necessity onecessary للحظ الفرق بين 🗐

(فعل مساعد بمعني يجب ويأتي بعده المصدر)

(اسم بمعنی ضرورة )



🗐 يمكننا استبدال **mustn't** بالتعبيرات التالية:

```
= It's not allowed to + inf. اليس مسموحاً أن = It's not permitted to + inf. اليس مسموحاً أن = It's forbidden to + inf. (from +ing) محرم = It's prohibited to + inf. (from +ing) = It's banned to + inf. (from +ing) = It's against the law. ضد القانون أن = It's illegal to + inf.
```

- ✓ You mustn't park your car here. 

  It is against the law to park your car here.
- ✓ It is not allowed to park your car here. 

  It is not permitted to park your car here.
- ✓ It is forbidden to park your car here. 

  It is banned to park your car here.
- ✓ It is prohibited to park your car here. 

  It is illegal to park your car here.
  - 🗐 يمكننا أيضا استخدام **mustn't** للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية / الالتزام الشخصى
- ✓ You mustn't waste your time.

  ✓ I mustn't leave my bedroom untidy.
  - أيضا استخدام cant للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقيام بشيء ما [
- √ You can't smoke in hospitals.

### have to - has to - need

#### (have to / has to / need (to))

- التعبير عن إلزام مفروض علينا . have to / has to / need (to) نستخدم
- 🗐 بعد (بدون اي اضافات). have to / has to / need (to)
  - he she it مع المفرد و has to / needs (to) تأتي [ ]
  - we they I you و الجمع و have to / need (to) تأتي [ ]
- ✓ We have to go to school on time.

  ✓ We need to go to school on time.
- √ She has to get a passport to travel to London.

في حالة النفي نستخدم [adon't have to / doesn't have to + inf.

- don't need to / doesn't need to / needn't + inf.

  ✓ She doesn't have to hurry, she isn't late for school.
- √ They don't have to buy bread; there is much in the fridge.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بهل كالأتي : (و يكون معناه " هل يجب ...؟ )

Po / Does + فاعل + have to / need (to) + inf. ...?

✓ Do you have to hurry?

Yes, we do.

No, we don't.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالأتي:

+ have to / need (to) + inf. ? فاعل + do / does + أداة استفهام

- ✓ What does he have to do to avoid traffic fines?
  - he has to stick to the rules.

🖺 للحظ صيغة المبني للمجمول كالآتي:

+ have to / has to / need (to) + be + P.P .....

√ I have to buy a present for my friend.

(active)

✓ A present for my friend has to be bought.

(Passive)



		📋 للتعبير عن الضرورة في الماضي نستخدم
	had to + inf.	
	I couldn't go out because I had to do my home	work.
	We had to do computer studies when we were	at prep school.
£		🗐 في حالة النفي نستخدم
	didn't have to + in	
	She didn't have to hurry, she wasn't late for sc	
	We didn't have to do computer studies when w	
(inneren		🗊 للحظ أن:
C	had to + مصدر = It was necessary (for +	مصدر + to (فاعل / ضمير مفعول
	I had to do my homework, so I couldn't go out.	
	= It was necessary for me to do my homework.	
	She didn't have to go shopping.  = It wasn't necessary for her to go shopping.	
	- ii wasiii necessary for her to go shopping.	B→Y
	• \$ 11 .1 • 12 .14 •	And And Halletter
		الشيء كان غير didn't have to عن أن الشيء كان غير الشنة
1	الرغم الله كان غير صروري He didn't have to get up early.	أما needn't have + p.p تعبر عن أن الشخ (so he didn't get up early)
	He needn't have got up early.	(but he got up early)
	ger alp call. J.	رود. همعنی ضرورة : a must اسم بمعنی ضرورة :
$\checkmark$	Getting a driving licence is a must to drive a ca	
	المصدر بدون to :	🕜 لا نستخدم to بعد كلمة needn't يأتي بعدها
1	We needn't go to the club.	en der gerinde der samt ab problem. Mei
,		€ نستخدم التركيب be to بمعني يجب للتعبير عن اا
<b>√</b>	Nadia is to admit that she did not know.	A SAME AND A SAME AND
	must - have to - need	لاحظ الاختلاف بين
تذكر	صي المشاعر القوية والأمنيات وعمل الدعوات والنصيحة القويـة و	
		أنفسنا بشيء.
	I must work hard for the exams next week.	(اِلزام شخصي)
	I must buy a present for my mother.	(مشاعر قوية)
	You must come to my party tonight.	(دعوة قوية)
<b>√</b>	You must stop smoking.	(نصيحة قوية)
,	ا مع القواعد أو عندما لا تمتلك اختيار لفعل شيء ما (مضطر إلى).	ave to / has to + infinitive تستخدم
	We have to go to school every day.  My father doesn't have to work today because it	it is a boliday
	She doesn't have to get up early. It's a holiday.	it is a nonday.
	اجة إلى شيء معين ونفيها <b>on't need to / needn't</b> + <b>inf</b> .	عن الحا <b>need (to) + inf.</b> تستخده 🗐
	Hassan needs to go to the bank after he finishe	
	I don't need to buy / needn't buy a new pen. I've	



### Modal verbs of deduction الاستنتاج

Key words Degree	Present Deduction استنتاج في المضارع	<b>Past Deduction</b> استنتاج في الماضي
- I'm sure	استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع .must + inf	استنتاج مؤكد في الماضي. <b>must have + p.p</b>
- I'm certain - I think - I believe	▶ It is made of gold; it must cost a lot of money.	► The floor was full of water; Toka must have forgotten to close the tap.
- Certainly	استنتاج مستبعد في المضارع .can't + inf	استنتاج مستبعد في الماضيcan't have + p.p
- I suppose - Impossible	► It is made of plastic; it can't cost a lot of money.	► The floor was full of water; Toka can't have closed the tap.
- I'm not sure - I'm not certain	might (may - could) + inf. استنتاج محتمل في المضارع	might (may - could) have + p.p. استنتاج محتمل في الماضي
- perhaps - It is probable - It is possible	► I think. Mr. Ahmed might be famous in the future.	▶ I didn't see Jana at school today. She might have been absent.

• بمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في المضارع ونستخدم

(must - can't - might - may) + be+ v + ing

√ Where is Jana? -I'm not sure. She may be studying.

• يمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في الماضي ونستخدم

(must - can't - might - may) have + been + v + ing

✓ I'm sure that Al Daifi was busy. He must have been preparing Giants' Revision. mustn't ونصنتاج مستبعد في الماضي ونستخدم couldn't have+ P.P ولكن لا يمكننا استخدام

✓ Mr Ahmed couldn't have been lazv as he worked hard.

Wise Saving

Never apologize for having high standards. People who really want to be in your life will rise up to meet them

لا تعتذر أبداً عن تميُّزك عمن حولك . إن من يريدون حقاً أن يكونوا في حياتك سيرتفعون ليلتقوا بك





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	We wash th	ese tomatoes. They'v	e already been wash	ed.
_	@ must	<b>b</b> doesn't have to	©needn't	dmustn't
2	Ali can't come out w	ith us this evening. H	e work late.	
	(a) have to		©has to	dmustn't
3	Sief to work	on Saturdays.		
4	a don't have	<b>b</b> doesn't have	<b>Chasn't</b>	dmustn't
4	You mustn't smoke i	n sleeping rooms. Th	is is a	_
a	(a) prohibition	<b>(b)</b> necessity ful car. She p	© apology	<b>d</b> suggestion
9	She owns a wonder	ful car. She p	oor.	
		<b>b</b> can't be	c)must be	dmust have been
6	Heill. He ea	ts like a horse.		
6	(g) must be	<b>6</b> can't be	©wont be	dmust have been
U	mader the se	chool bus. He came t	o school late.	(A) a!!
Q	There have	been a condeterm Ti	©can miss	dcan't miss
	(a) must		ne streets are covered	
		<b>bcan't</b> person. You	©might most him	<b>d</b> may
		b mustn't		<b>d</b> must
10	work from	8.30 to 5.30 every da	v	(d)IIIUSI
	a have to			<b>d</b> )must
			ortune. It's made of pla	
	a can't	<b>b</b> must	©might	@mustn't
12	We didn't have much	n time yesterday so w	ve hurrv.	
	a have to	<b>b</b> had to	©has to	<b>d</b> must
13	had toothache last	night. I see m	y dentist.	
	(a) must	(h) should	Chad to	dhave to
14	He go to sch	ool yesterday. It was	a holiday.	
	a neeant	(D) WONT	calant nave to	dmay not
		today. It is your choic	ce.	
	a have to	<b>b</b> must	© had to	d don't have to
	Fill in gap:			
16	Oh no, I don't have r	nv kevs! I hav	e left them in the taxi.	
10	Ali be happy	. His girlfriend just ag	reed to marry him.	
18	You smoke o	outside. Smoking is n	ot allowed inside the b	ouilding.
19	John buy so	me new shoes for las	t night's party.	3
20	l wear glass	es because I can't se	e so clearly.	
COLUMN TO SERVICE STATE OF THE PARTY OF THE	Find the mistake, t			
			ou about something.	[]
22	My school is not far.	l need take a taxi	ou about something.	[
			ght this year. They ca	
		Jan andy mare bed	g and Joan. They oa	[]
24	What do I had to do I	to get a new driving li	cence?	
26	You needn't park he	re. It says "No Parkin	q."	



# 2 Intermediate Exercises فير نفسك

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:			
1	Everything will be C	K. You worry	<i>1</i> .			
	@must	(b) have to	© needn't	doesn't have to		
	He to get up	•				
	adidn't need		© mustn't	<b>d</b> must		
3	Ahmed can stay her	e. He come w	rith us.			
	@needn't	<b>b</b> have to	© must	dhas to		
4		hat I said. You				
		<b>b</b> don't have to		<b>d</b> must		
6	We've got plenty of t	time. We hurr	y.			
	@needn't	<b>b</b> have to	© doesn't have to	dhas to		
6	I have to talk to Ali. I	forget to cal	l him.			
	adoesn't have to	<b>b</b> mustn't	© need to	<b>d</b> must		
7	Last week, Toka bro	ke her arm and	go to hospital.	_		
	a have to	<b>b</b> had to	© has to	dmust		
8	I to wear gla	asses for reading.				
-	a have	<b>b</b> has	© must	<b>d</b> needn't		
9	You park yo	ur car here until you				
	@mustn't	<b>b</b> must	<b>©can't</b>	dmust be		
10		have to go after I had				
	@did	<b>b</b> doing	© does	<b>d</b> do		
00	The driver t					
44	@are to	<b>b</b> need	© is to	dhave to		
12		suit to work, but he				
44	aneed to	<b>b</b> have to		dmust		
(E		ng all day. You		(A) was sub-t		
44	@must	(b) can't		d might		
U			s street. Shel			
46	@ must	0	© should	dwill		
ae		wo children, he		dwill be		
Marie Control	@may be	<b>6</b> must be	(c) can't be	@wiii be		
	Fill in gap:					
16	At my sports club,	everyone wea	ar flat shoes. It's an im	portant rule.		
96	That woman drives	a very expensive car	. She have a l	ot of money.		
16	Oh, the phone is rin	ging. Answer it. It	be Toka. She alw	ays rings at this time.		
OC.	<b>1</b> ♥ Go and look in the kitchen for your gloves. They be in there. <b>२</b> ♥ Do you know where Ali is? He be out - his car keys are on the table.					
20			out - nis car keys are	on the table.		
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:				
		chool by eight o'clocl		[		
20	It can't have rained	a lot in the night. The	re are puddles every	where. [		
		ou needn't improve yo		[		
		o the swimming pool.		[		
20	You needn't to mention this to your mother.					



# Intermediate Exercises Mark 25

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c	or d:		
1	Nada get ve	ery bored in her job.	She does the same thi	ng everv dav.	
	@ must	<b>b</b> can't	© mustn't	d might	
2	Ahmed is a professo	or of chemistry. He	very clever.		
		<b>b</b> must be		d couldn't have	
3	I haven't go	to the doctor for age	es.		
	a have to	<b>b</b> had to	© has to	dmust	
4	Can I talk to you, ple	ase? Sorry, I	go now. I'm late.		
	@mustn't	<b>b</b> has to		<b>d</b> must	
6	My son is ill so I	stay at home.			
-	•	<b>b</b> has to		<b>d</b> may	
		orrow, so Ig		•	
		<b>b</b> doesn't have to		<b>dhave to</b>	
7	That restaurant	be very good. It'	s always full of people	•	
-		<b>b</b> can't	© mustn't	dmust	
8	I don't want anyone	to know about our pl	an. You tell an	yone.	
-	•	<b>b</b> must	© mustn't	doesn't have to	
	It's strange story, bu				
		<b>b</b> can't be		dcan be	
		e on time. I k			
	a have to	<b>b</b> must	© mustn't	ddon't have to	
		job be recei	_	_	
		<b>b</b> needn't to	© has to	<b>d</b> must	
		n time. We h		_	
		<b>b</b> don't have to		dhas to	
<b>UE</b>	They can't fix my cor	mputer, so I		<b>O</b>	
-	•		© will have	<b>d</b> had	
		ted me. She		<b>a</b>	
			© must have got		
UE	Why did he get up ea	arly? Hegot up so	early. He could have s		
	anave to nave	(b) must nave	© needn't have	<b>d</b> needn't	
	→ Fill in gap:		***************************************		
<b>1</b> 6	My sister made a ca	ke. You try i	t. It's lovely!		
17	Jana always does re	ally well on exams. S	She study a lot.		
		ite in such a difficult			
		he to wear a			
	Come and see me tomorrow. You come and see me tomorrow.				
21		licines where childre	on can find them		
		all day, you can't be		[]	
			e mustn't love books.		
	Does he has to use t		c madur tiove books.	[]	
			water them before I w		
	July promited dank to			one on nonady.	



# Advanced Exercises Mark 25

1	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	r d:	
1	I can manage the sh	nopping alone. You	go with me.	
	@must	<b>b</b> doesn't have to	_	<b>d</b> don't have to
2	I must finish all my w	ork today or I	. work tomorrow.	
100	<b>a</b> have to	<b>b</b> had to	0	<b>d</b> must
3		ery near the motorway		
	_	_		
4	A: Joe is a hard worl	ker. <b>B:</b> Joe? You		_
_	@must	(b) can't		<b>d</b> might
6		anywhere. I		
4	_	<b>b</b> can't have left		d)might have left
6		s have frustra	•	
4	@must	<b>b</b> should	© can't	<b>d</b> needn't
V		. have been more car		(A) abasida
6		<b>b</b> may		d should
Q.		fficulty driving to Cair		itner was so bad. <b>(d)have been</b>
C	©have	<b>bhave had</b> d was correct. He	•	gilave beell
U		u was correct. не <b>(b)may be</b>		dcan't be
40	_	s here. It's forbidden.	•	d carribe
44		b mustn't		d should
11		d, you always		
44	(a) mustn't	<b>b</b> need		d have to
12		acket on the floor . No	_	
		<b>b</b> mightn't have		d shouldn't have
13		unch with us , it's the f		
	(a) can	<b>b</b> should	© must	d have to
14		alled me when you ar	rived. I wish that you	had called me
	@ might	<b>b</b> must	© should	<b>d</b> will
16		e on time every day. C	Dur boss is an unforgi	
	@ don't have to	<b>b</b> mustn't	© have to	d needn't
	> Fill in gap:			
16	He was very busy. I	make an app	ointment to see him.	
10	You practise	a lot before you gave	e your speech. It was	really good.
		e a great cook. You ar		et back home to eat!
		to be demolished to b		
20	I really phor	ne my parents to tell t	hem I'm going to be la	ite home today.
	Find the mistake, t	then correct it:		
		, so we needn't walk.		[]
22	Food products which	h are out of date mus	t be eaten.	[]
26	It was raining heavil	y, so we must take a	taxi to get to the office	e on time. []
	•	tside. That man in the		
26	I regret going, but I	didn't have no choice	•	[]





	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	did Suzan	leave home?		J
4	@ How long	<b>b</b> How long ago	© How much	<b>d</b> How many
2	I got home	e, the children were alre	ady asleep.	
	By the time	<b>(b)</b> Until	© By	<b>d</b> Whenever
Q	Hassan apologized	dshouting at me	е.	
	@ at	<b>(b) in</b>	© for	<b>d</b> about
C	ne denied	his mother's vase.		
G	(a) to break	<b>b</b> broke	© have broken	<b>d</b> breaking
4	m you your	room, you can go out to		
6	Look at the aurabi	<b>b</b> tided	© had tided	<b>d</b> are tiding
4	(a) is being	ne, it a beautiful	I day.	
7	She hadn't	<b>b</b> is going to be	© be	<b>d</b> being
	(a) vet	t finished the washing u	p when the guests a	
8	<b>(a)</b> yet That's the boy	father is my teache	© before	d still
Ϊ,	@ whose	(b) who's	r. ©who	
9	The office	I work is very large.	C wno	<b>d</b> that
	@ which	<b>b</b> what	Cuboro	
10	They for ar	n hour now, so they're ti	red	<b>d</b> when
	@ exercise	<b>b</b> have been exercising	Care evercising	d word eversions
10	Two months	a long time to wait for	a reply	were exercising
	(a) are	(b) is	© were	d have been
12	We waved goodby	: the car was ou	ut of sight.	w lidve beelf
	(d) while	(b) when	© until	d by the time
13	They had lots of po	tatoes, so they	buv anv more	
44	@ mustn't	<b>b</b> couldn't	© wouldn't	d didn't need to
U	much, mad	<b>© couldn't</b> le him irritable.		
	By worrying	(b) Worrying	© Worry	<b>d</b> Through worrying
UQ	Adel is inte	resting painter I have ev	ver known.	
	(d) more	(b) the more	@ mach	d the most
UU	As soon as she saw	the girls, she asked the	em what they	••••
	a naa been doing	<b>b</b> have been doing	© have done	d are doing
	Fill in gap:			
	Ramses Hilton is (a	)very expensi	ve hotel on the ban	k of (b) River
	ivile. The notel is v	ery attractive. Lots of t	famous people love	e (c) there in
	order to enjoy the	privacy that the hotel	offer them it also	(d) security
	guards to keep rep			000 Sissing
16	Find the mistake,			
	If you don't stop to	smoke, you'll make your	self ill.	[]
	Jana would prefer t	o work as a doctor from	work as a nurse.	[]
	ivadia rias peen stud He doosn't comment	dying English since thre	e months.	[]
2	Recause the troffic	ot of cash in order that a I arrived at the office lat	avoid getting robbe	
-	because the traffic	i ai i iveu at the office lat	e.	[]
	□			



		t answer from a, b, c or d		
1	" you hurry	, you will be late for worl	k." "I'm nearly read	ly now."
	@ Supposing	(b) Providing	© When	(d) Unless
2	"Did you phone Ade	el vesterdav?" "No, I	, he came roun	id to see me."
	a needn't	(b) didn't need to	(C) shouldn't	(a) mustn't
3	"Do vou have pen-f	riends?" "Yes, and	of them live apr	oad.
	(a) neither	(b) both	(C) all	<b>d</b> either
4	"I cut my hair myse	If." "Really? How brave!	1 by a haird	dresser."
	a cut mine	<b>b</b> have mine cut	© am cutting mine	d mine is cut
G	"I'm sorry I'm late."	' "I here for over	an hour."	
	(a) was waiting	(b) am waiting	© have waited	d have been waiting
6	"Shall I take my coa	at with me?" "Yes, take it	t it gets col	d later."
	(a) in case	(b) whereas	© in spite	<b>d</b> however
1	"Why didn't you go	to the party?" "Because	e of my frie	nds was invited."
	(a) none	<b>b</b> both	Ceither	<b>d</b> no
8	it was raini	ing, he took his umbrella	with him.	
,	a Due to	<b>b</b> Because of	<b>©</b> Since	<b>d</b> Though
9	He be at w	ork. His car isn't outside	his house.	
	(a) might	<b>b</b> will	© can't	d must
10		hair cut next Saturday.		
	(a) have	<b>b</b> have had	©will have	<b>d</b> had
		the door. It's locked.		
	@ pushing	<b>b</b> push trousers to skirts.	© to push	d to pushing
12	She prefers	trousers to skirts.		
	<b>a</b> wearing	<b>b</b> wear	© to wear	d to wearing
13		at two o'clock tomorrow	w afternoon.	
	@ starts	<b>b</b> start	© is starting	<b>d</b> starting
14	We phone	Mary. It's her birthday to	oday.	
44	a needn't	<b>b</b> don't have to	© ought to	d are able to
(16		an, he is to keep	ing away all night.	d) using
44		<b>b</b> been used		d using
UC	_	o know Adel Imam,	••••	d does they
	a don't they	<b>b</b> didn't they	Cooesiii iiley	a does mey
	Fill in gap:			
16	Egypt is a country	in (a) north ea	st of Africa. Cairo	is the capital of Egypt.
	Many crops (b)	planted in Egypt.	It aspires to expor	t the narvest to foreign
	countries. Egypt h	nas many tourist destina	ations. It nopes (c)	Increase the
		s. If tourists are well trea	tea, tney (a)	surely come again.
	Find the mistake			
16	Neither John nor	Tom doesn't like staying	up late.	[]
1	She isn't used to li	ve in tropical climates.		<u>[</u> ]
20	The drowning chil	d was risking by the life	guard yesterday.	[]
2	The supermarket	has thirty employees, mo	ost of which work p	art time. []
2	Thick fog prevente	ed the plane of taking off	f.	
2	use the traffic I ar	rived at the office late.		[]



	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:				
		degree course difficult?		to it "	
	got used	<b>b</b> used	© was used	d am used	
2	"Did you read both	of those books?" "Yes.	but I didn't eniov	of thom "	
_	@ neither	<b>b</b> both day." "You have	© all	d) either	
3	"I feel very tired to	day." "Youhave	stayed up so late la	ast night."	
	(a) could	(b) might	©shouldn't	d) won't	
4	"I love going to the	beach." "".			
_	@ So do I	<b>b</b> So I do	© Neither do I	d Nor I do.	
5	"This cake tastes v	ery sweet." "I think I put	sugar in it	, ,,	
	(a) too many	(b) too much	© a lot	d a great deal	
6	"Why are you so tir	ed?" "Because I	to getting up early	in the morning "	
4	am used	<b>b</b> am not used	© didn't use	d used	
7	I take your	order now, madam?	50 00 000	0 3332	
	@ May	(b) Should	© Must	<b>@</b> Ought	
8	the heavy s	snow, we managed to ge	et to the office.		
_	a in spite of	<b>(b)</b> While	© However	<b>d</b> Whereas	
9	Mai all her	money by the time the sl	nops closed.	© 111101000	
	(a) had spent	<b>b</b> was spending	(C) spent	d has spent	
10	He acts he	were my friend, but he is	sn't.		
	as though	<b>b</b> though	© gs	d like	
00	If you in suc	ch a hurry, you wouldn't	have forgotten the	file.	
	(a) hadn't lett	(b) had left	Chave left	d having left	
12	John fell his	s bicycle and hurt his kn	ees.		
	(a) down	<b>b</b> around	<b>C</b> about	d off	
13	No reporters	to approach the scen	e of the accident.	_	
	(a) allowed	<b>b</b> were allowed	© needn't	d didn't have	
14	The girl at t	hat desk is my best frier	nd.		
	<b>a</b> sits	<b>b</b> to sit	_	<b>d</b> sitting	
	The sea isi				
44	a quite a clean	<b>(b)</b> quite clean	© clean quite	d a quite clean	
116	We expect everyon	e to the meeting			
	a to come	<b>b</b> come	©to coming	<b>d</b> coming	
	Fill in gap:			_	
10	Healthy food should	l include vitamins and pr	oteins. It has to (a)	fresh and	
	low in fat and salt. It	shouldn't contain harm	ful chemical additi	ves. If we (b)	
	not eat the right foo	d, we (c) get ill	and lose our ability	(d) do our	
	work well.			(-)	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:			
		more. He doesn't enjoy	to be laughed at	[]	
19	He didn't work hard	for he lost his work.	to be laughted at.	[]	
20	His mother is Frenc	h even though his father	is English	[]	
40	prefer reading a bo	ook than watching T.V.		ř i	
22	My uncle has a large	e collection of antiques,	many of whom are	valuable. [ 1	
			- This is a second of the seco		



25

	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:				
1	You will do as I tell y	/ou?			
	a won't you	<b>b</b> do you	© wouldn't you		
2	You can tell from he	er mouth and eyes that s	she her mo	ther.	
	a takes after	<b>b</b> takes down	•	d takes off	
3	You look tired these	e days. You to b	ed earlier.		
	@ will go	<b>b</b> should go	© ought to	d) shouldn't go	
4	Yesterday they left	France where	they are going to sp	bend their holiday.	
	@ from	<b>b</b> to	© for	<b>d</b> in	
6	Why do you always	avoidhim?			
_	a meeting	<b>b</b> to meet	© meet	d in meeting	
6	Who was she given				
_	<b>a</b> by	<b>b</b> for	© from	<b>d</b> of	
7	When you have finis	shed typing the report, i	t by anoth	er secretary.	
4	will check	<b>b</b> checked	© will be checked	a) nas cneckea	
8		ne looked she			
	a such as	(b) so	© the same	d as if	
9	We hope that	us when you come to	o our country.		
44	a you visited	<b>b</b> you would visit	© you'll visit	d you're visiting	
10		ld weather that we had			
44	(a) rather	(b) such	© SO	d such a	
QQ	Those boys, are the	e ones he has le	ong observed.	d) what	
44	(a) where		© which	Wildi	
UZ	There is n		© a lot	d) not	
46	(a) any	<b>b</b> no	•		
UE		een getting worse	© during	<b>d</b> in	
44	(a) for	<b>b</b> since	Cubing		
UC		ot of damage.  (b) the	© some	d) no article	
46	© a		C Some		
UE		the metre.	(c) the same as	d the same than	
46	a smaller than	ys me laugh.	C IIIC Saille as		
<b>U</b> C		b make	© does	d makes	
	Fill in gap:		Incurrence of English	ich It gives (b)	
	A dictionary is very	y important for (a) s of a word. Most diction	learners of Engl paries help them to	pronounce a word	
	correctly (c)	using pronunciation	symbols and syllab	les. Moreover, it shows	
	correctly (c) using pronunciation symbols and syllables. Moreover, it shows the learner (d) to use the word by giving them examples in sentences.				
	Find the mistake				
46		***************************************	eword	[	
	He tound it diπicul	t enough to do the cross	ny way	[	
		t I'll carry out working a	ily way.	[	
	I'm happy at the jo I've never seen so			[	
6	My brother been so	lifficult decision to do ne	ext week.	[	
G.	iny bround has a c	militare accision to do in			

# Exercise 5

# **General Exercise On Grammar**



	Choose the correc	et answer from a, b, c or o	d:	The state of the s			
	"Have you found your keys yet?" "No, I've looked but I can't find them."						
		<b>b</b> everything					
2		ing?" "I can't go until th					
		<b>b</b> arrives					
3	"Where's Ashraf?"	"I'm not sure. He	be in the study."				
	@ might			<b>d</b> shall			
4	is that lette	er I wrote? Have you see					
4	@ Which	<b>b</b> When	© What	<b>d</b> Where			
E		closed, what will we do					
4	@ Unless	<b>b</b> Though	© Supposing	<b>@</b> Providing			
O		e sofa about the		<b>a</b>			
4		<b>b</b> to think		<b>d</b> thinking			
U		hear they a pr					
6		<b>b</b> were winning					
O		early this morning, so w					
0		<b>b</b> didn't need to		@ couldn't			
4		k fixed before we went o					
40		<b>b</b> are having		will be naving			
W.	No	money can buy happine  b Never		<b>@</b> Not			
99	hor opinion	n, he was thoroughly unt		W NOT			
44	(a) In	b To	© With	<b>d</b> For			
12	0	orried about his health,					
44		<b>b</b> break down					
13		was responsible for t		W KITOCK GOWII			
		<b>b</b> which		(d) whose			
14		vith the girls at the resta					
		<b>b</b> scarcely never					
15		been carrying an umbre					
		<b>b</b> love	©were	d has			
16	Have you any object	ction him to lunc	ch?				
	a being asked	<b>b</b> to asking	© to ask	<b>d</b> asking			
	Fill in gap:						
10	My father is a grea	at man. He (a)	a good student ar	nd now he (b)			
	worked for the san	ne company (c)	20 years ago. He	is (d) to retire			
	next year.						
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:					
18		happier than she is now	<i>l</i> .	Γ			
	He can't stand trea		•	[]			
		job and it's very well pa	id.	[]			
		to understand if you ex					
		ne same house for twelv					
	r 1						



	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or	r d:	
1	You needn't the book back until I	Monday.	
	(a) be brought (b) brought	_	<b>d</b> bring
2	Wouldn't you rather we shopping	today? I'm very tire	ed.
	@ don't do	©wouldn't go	d won't go
3	Will you please let? I'll tell you w		
	@ me to speak b that I speak	© me speak	d me speaking
4	Why watch a film on TV?		
	(a) do we (b) aren't we	© shall we	d don't we
6	'Where are you going so fast?' 'Sorry, I	hurry.'	
	@ am in a	©am in	d have
6	When I was five, I swim quite wel	II.	
	@ could		d let
1	This is the girl was very ill last me		
	(a) which (b) whom		d) who
8	They won't believe me I swear it's		
	(a) whatever (b) even if		d however
9	The tennis court was wet for us t		
	@ very <b>(b)</b> too		d so
10	The more he eats he gets.	<u> </u>	
-	(a) the fatter (b) fatter	© fattest	d) faster
00	The cook did nothing but about t	0	
-	(a) to complain (b) complain		d he'd complained
12	That was very kind you. Thank you very		
	(a) from (b) of		d) on
13	She was angry to argue with her	_	
44	(a) too (b) quite	© so	d very
14	day, I will buy a big house with a		<b>©</b> 13.7
44	(a) A (b) The	© That	d One
16	you leave now, you won't miss th	e start of the film	
44	© Supposing	© Providing	d Would
16	If I feel better tonight, I to the par	tv	<b>9</b> 1100.a
44	(a) would go (b) go	© went	d) may go
	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		<b>©</b> , <b>3</b> 0
15	Fill in gap:		anders of the world. It
UV	No one can deny that the computer is o		
	plays (a) important part in tec	nnology because in	alde It can be used in
	faster (b) human beings. It is us	sea in (C) II	elds. It call be used in
	banks to control cashing and bank acco	unts. In addition, th	le computer is ideal for
	(d) our everyday needs.		
	Find the mistake, then correct it:		
	I have cut my hair last week.		[]
-	Neither Nadia of Fadia knows how to driv		[]
44	She took off her coat by the time she enter		[]
	The bus to Alexandria departs for an hou		[]
22	This holiday was different of all the others	s.	[]



	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:				
1	"Did you enjoy your holiday?	" "Yes, but I'm glad	home again."		
	(a) being (b) to be	© be	d have been		
2	"Have you got any brothers?"	" "I've got two of the	em are older than me."		
	(a) Either (b) Both	© All			
3	"I've just passed my driving t	est." "Congratulations. I wis	h I a car."		
	(a) will drive (b) can di	ive © drive	d could drive		
4	I you, I would look for				
	Would     Were	© Should	d Had		
E	sugar shall I add to ti	ne cake mixture?			
_	(a) How often (b) How n				
6	Do you know she had	been working there before	she retired?.		
	(a) when (b) how lo	ong © how long a	go d what time		
7	Janet had trouble with her jo	b at first." "Yes, she	to working on her own."		
4	(a) used (b) get us	ed © was used	d wasn't used		
8	The reason he is hap	py is that e has just passed l	nis exams.		
_	(a) where (b) when	© that	d why		
Q	Who in my desk? This	ngs have been moved.			
44	(a) look (b) looks	© looking	d has been looking		
	had he put down the				
44		© Hardly	d Yet		
UU	he to look for us, he	vould not be able to find us.			
44	(a) Could (b) Were		<b>@ Might</b>		
UZ	According to the weather		<u>-</u>		
46	(a) forecast (b) future	© expectancy	<b>d</b> experience		
<b>U</b> E	Ayman will be ready in a minu				
44		© could have	<b>d</b> would have had		
UG	Give her the telescope numb				
46	a unless b perhap		d whether		
	He gave me two oranges but  (a) all (b) both				
		© some	<b>d</b> either		
W.	He is deaf to hear who (a) too (b) so	at we say. © very	d enough		
		Cvery	w enough		
96	Fill in gap:				
UV	The heart is the most vital o	rgan in the human body. If	it stops, death (a)		
	surely follow. Some of (b)				
	badly. Smoking for example		_		
	people (c) stopped	smoking recently becaus	e they want to avoid (d)		
	heart diseases.				
46	Find the mistake, then corre				
	A cure for the disease hoped		[]		
	Eating too much chocolate m		[]		
	He can't lying when he told us		[]		
66	He left his job because he wa	s dissatisfied for months.	[]		
44	If I will have enough money, I'	ii buy you a new bicycle.			
	@ c = c=== @ c ===		Time seasification with		

# Exercise

## General Exercise On Grammar



	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or c	l:	
1	You broke the wind	ow,?		
	@ did you	<b>b</b> didn't you	© have you	d haven't you
2	You can try being a	guitarist as soon as you	J	
	(a) will qualify	<b>b</b> qualify	© will be qualified	d may qualify
3		ered that was very cleve		_
	(a) whatever	<b>b</b> whoever	© whomever	d whosever
4		up. I can't hear.		
4		<b>b</b> to say	<b>O</b> •	<b>d</b> shouting
•	What, you want din	ner? I didn't know you	hungry!	
4	@ was so	<b>b</b> were so	© will be such	(d) were such
6	What would you do	if you Prime Mi	inister?	
4	@ was	<b>(b) were</b> at the theatre,	© be	d would be
7	We saw a new play	at the theatre,	we had supper at a	restaurant.
4		<b>b</b> then which		
8		o meet for lunch but he		
	@ up	(b) on	© in	d over
9		time for lunch.		
44		<b>b</b> many		d much
10		e theatre in time for the		
44	•	<b>b</b> reached	© got	d left
00	Therenews		0 "	
44		<b>b</b> isn't much		d hasn't many
12		come from our o		
44		<b>b</b> They all		d All they
13		father has a grocery		
44		<b>b</b> which		<b>d</b> whom
14	That opera singer.	sung better in h	nis lite.	
44		<b>b</b> has never	c) have never	d) never nave
	She asked			
		<b>b</b> him to	~	d he
16		decadence, a		
	a even though	<b>b</b> nevertheless	© however	d in spite of
	Fill in gap:			
16	Ahmed has learnt t	to play the piano since h	ie was ten. He parti	cipated in many
	school concerts (a)	) 2004. No one (	b) ever pla	yed as well as him. His
	music teacher has	always encouraged him	n. He always wante	d (c) form a
	band. May be next	year his dream ( <mark>d</mark> )	come true.	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
16	Expensive however	r the restaurant was, th	e food tasted terrib	le. []
	I can only help if yo			[]
	In spite the rain, th			[]
20	Ahmed is having hi	is house decorating at t	he moment.	[]
20	She was upset bec	ause she was waiting to	hear from her son	for days. []
	•			



	Choose the correc	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	0.000 to 10.000
-		dy with idea of t		e house.
	@ any	<b>b</b> much	©no	d few
2	I intend the	e summer studying.		
	(a) spend	(b) of spending	© to spend	d) I will spend
3	It was exp	ensive present that she	didn't know what to	sav!
	a such a	<b>(b)</b> such an	©so much	(d) so
4	It looks terrible,		0	
	(a) isn't in		© does it	d doesn't it
6		he to bed.		<b>O</b>
	@ would go		<b>©went</b>	d will go
6	It is raining,	take your umbrella.		
	a so that	<b>b</b> so	© because	<b>d</b> why
7	It when I c	ame.		
_	@ was windy	<b>b</b> had a wind	© made a wind	d did wind
8	It rain but	l doubt it		
	(a) will		© can	<b>d</b> should
9	I shouldn't at	t you yesterday,' Jane sa	aid when she apolo	gized to her friend.
	(a) shout	<b>b</b> to shout	© be shouted	d have shouted
	I have lot o			
44	<b>a</b> other	<b>b</b> another	© others	d the others
	I hate a ca			
44	a to drive	<b>b</b> driving	<b>©drive</b>	d the drive
		to see me,' said Jim.		
44	@ nobody	<b>b</b> anything	<b>©anybody</b>	d no one
(E	I can't help	that I'll win the pools or		
44	(a) hope	<b>b</b> hoping	© to expect	d that I hope
UC	can't my i	mind whether to go to It	aly or Spain for my	
44	a make off	<b>b</b> make up	© make for	d make at
UE	I my friend	in two hours' time		
	@ meet		© meets	d was meeting
	I don't like	N-0		
	(a) that I go	<b>b</b> I go	©go	<b>d</b> going
	Fill in gap:			
17	Energy and water	are the artery of life. A	II living things and	machines (a)
	live or work withou	t them. So we mustn't i	gnore these proble	ms (b) we will
		Nile is the only source		in Egypt. So we must
	***************************************	se (d) water only	y when necessary.	
	<ul><li>Find the mistake,</li></ul>			
	He tried to give awa			[]
90	l was walking down	the street while a car s	topped beside me.	[]
	l'Il leave before he i			[]
	He is keen at photo			[]
22	All is not good abou	ıt playing football. He ra	ther play squash.	[]



	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:	
1	He waited for her fo	or two hours but she did		
		<b>b</b> turn out	©turn up	d turn off
2	He wasn't			
		<b>b</b> strong enough		gh @such strong
3		ell, but he plays tennis .		
_		<b>b</b> much better		<b>d</b> best
4		ondary school for three		
4	a has been	<b>b</b> is	Chad been	d was
E		lass done very		
4	(a) have	(b) are	Chas	<b>d</b> is
6	Each of the		0.1.1	
4		<b>b</b> sisters has		
7		the door last n		
4		<b>b</b> closing	© of closing	d of close
6	By next week I	all my exams.		
	a have finished	<b>b</b> finished	© will nave tinisne	a @ naa finishea
E		been the bank.		
44	(a) stolen from	<b>6</b> robbed at	©stolen to	d robbed in
UU	ne realize	d what happened he cal	led the police.	d So soon
44	(a) 500n	(b) As soon as	octourant?	<b>d</b> 30 soon
UU		eal at the new Chinese r <b>ⓑ What about</b>		d Why don't we
46		want to go, I'll say no m		G villy don't we
UC		<b>b</b> Since		<b>d</b> Therefore
16	the house	work. Maggie sat down	to rest	
We		<b>b</b> Having done		d Has done
10		I closed my eyes.		
44	Minet	<b>b</b> as soon as	© already	d) still
16		la it rains later t		
44	a so that	<b>b</b> in case	© in order to	d due to
16	No information	to the new staff yet		
		<b>b</b> has been given	©was given	d was being given
	> Fill in gap:			
16		nt a story from the boo	kshon (a)	story was written by
W	Naguih Mahfouz	l enjoyed it very much	that I have (b)	all the afternoon
	(c) it. It v	vas about the Egyptian	Revolution in 19	19. I think my friends
	(d) enjoy it			-
	Find the mistake			
		ely hard that he got a pr	comotion	[]
		ere disability, she fulfille		[]
20	It thought that mos	st of the society's proble	ms are the result of	
		is mistakes correct.		[]
		perations on people in h	ospitals.	[]
-	J =		-	

# Exercise

# **General Exercise On Grammar**



	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:	
1	some spar	e time, Tom went for a v	valk.	
		<b>b</b> Have	© Has	d To have
2	I remember the tim	e I fell and brok	e my leg.	
	(a) where	<b>b</b> when	© which	d why
3	It's getting	colder. I think it's going	to snow.	
_	@ coldest	<b>b</b> cold and	© colder and	d coldest and
4	The boys avoided.	through the dark	k forest.	
_		<b>b</b> walking		d to walking
E		ed we got to the	theatre.	
4		<b>b</b> until	© just	d by the time
6		oping yesterday becaus		
4	a needn't have	<b>b</b> need to	© didn't need to	d don't need to
U		th. I in a new ho		_
4	will live	<b>b</b> will be living	© am living	d will have lived
		once?" No, I, I ca		
	(a) mustn't	<b>b</b> needn't	c hadn't	d haven't
E	having no t	alents, the man became	a popular TV. pers	sonality.
44		<b>b</b> Although	© Unless	d in spite of
UU	Don't make any noi		28	
99	will	<b>b</b> do	© won't	d don't
W		laughing. There was a l		A levelton
16		<b>(b) laughed</b> at parties without th		<b>d</b> laughter
44	a out		© on	d up
16	Her mother made h	ner the piano all	afternoon	a op
44		<b>b</b> practise		<b>d</b> practising
14		t to avoid to that		w practising
-		<b>b</b> spoke		d) to speak
16		take a bus.	© speaking	
	a needn't	<b>b</b> wouldn't	© mustn't	d shouldn't
16	He was starring	at the enemy.	<u> </u>	O
	(a) hard	<b>b</b> hardly	<b>©</b> hardening	<b>d</b> hardy
	Fill in gap:			
10	We are (a)	tomorrow afternoon to A	Aswan on a holiday	We (b)
		tickets we need for our		
		ut not too expensive.	,	,
	Find the mistake,	incidental and the contract of		
18		hich I last saw a comic t	film	[]
		alked forward the front o		[]
		e he lived in Alexandria k		
		nis teeth extracting yest		[]
		medicine every morning		[]



	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or	d:	***************************************
-		rted the journey than w		
		<b>b</b> no sooner		<b>d</b> hardly
2	When we lived by the	he sea; we to sv	vim everv mornina.	
	_	<b>b</b> used	-	d got used
-	0	ends. They never speak	_	
	(a) would		© can't	d) mustn't
		much than this		
		(b) tall	© tallest	d being tall
	0	n the wall the fir	<u> </u>	
		<b>b</b> under		d at
		dn't go to work yesterda		
	(a) Feeling			d To have felt
7	"Where is dad?" "H	le's in the garden	some apples from	n the tree."
		<b>b</b> picking		
		salary when one has a l		
		<b>b</b> Having to live	•	
4		about the accident	_	
		n <b>(b)</b> any information		
10		p after he a hea		<b>©</b>
	(a) has	(b) had	© has had	d had had
11	He has plenty of mo	oney. He earn h	is living.	<b>©</b>
		<b>b</b> mustn't	© shouldn't	d) couldn't
12	0	. The news bad	•	
	a are	<b>b</b> was	© with	d were
13		train if he soon	•	
		<b>b</b> won't pack		d does not pack
14		good-looking dog,		
		<b>b</b> wasn't he		d) is he
16		finished it.		<u> </u>
	@ yet	<b>b</b> still	© soon	<b>d</b> already
16		lution worse the		
	(a) will get	<b>b</b> got	© is getting	d was getting
	Fill in gap:			
46		tadium ta watab faatba	Il motob o wook on	a While we (a)
UU		tadium to watch footba h, it started to rain. Dur		
		the ball. No sooner had		
		(d) match than		
			inc spectators for t	ne stadiam.
66	Find the mistake,			
		machine is more econo	omical model on the	
		e, Ali had already left.		[]
-		the day on the beach?	iles	[] []
41 41		a diet, she put on five k		[]
44	TOU MUST CUT OΠ The	e amount of sugar you o	consume.	[]
	NAME OF TAXABLE PARTY O			

	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	Aya by the	e time I get home tonigh	t.	
	(a) is leaving	<b>b</b> will have left	© will leave	d) will be leaving
2	Jane works very h	ard Kate is lazy.	•	3
	(a) whereas	<b>b</b> despite	© though	d in spite
3	you give m	ne a lift to the supermark	ket please?	•
4	@ Ought		© Would	d Do
4	"Did you watch the	e film yesterday?" "No, it	t by the time	e we got home."
4	(a) finished	<b>b</b> has finished	© was finishing	d had finished
6	" we miss t	he bus, what will we do?	?" "Call a taxi."	
	© Supposing	<b>b</b> Providing	© When	<b>d</b> Unless
O	"Are you tired?" "N	No, I to walking I	ong distances."	
6	a got used	<b>b</b> used	© am used to	d am using
U	Both of those dres	ses are beautiful. Yes, k	out I don't think	of them will fit me.
6		<b>b</b> neither	© either	d no
Q	"Can I go out tonig	ht, mum?" "I'd rather yo	u at home and d	lid your homework."
6	(a) Will Stay	<b>b</b> stayed	© stay	d had stayed
e	"How long	Tony?" "Since we were	children."	
96	(a) ala you know	<b>b</b> do you know	© had you known	d have you known
UU	Lalla doesn't stud	y enough." "I know. I am	n afraid she	her exams.
44	" longtte bee been	<b>b</b> won't be passing	© won't have pass	ed <b>d</b> isn't passing
WW	Janette nas peen	writing letters all morning	ng." "Yes, she	six letters so far."
10	"The sun is your br	<b>b</b> has been writing	C nas written	d was writing
44	where	ight today." "I know. Tha	at's I'm wea	
16	A: "I love reading."	<b>b</b> when	© wny	<b>d</b> which
44	al do so	<b>b</b> so I am	©so I do	(A) and all
14	He made her	the report four times.	C SO I do	d so do I
44	a write	<b>b</b> to write	© wrote	<b>d</b> writing
16	He's very pleased	his new secreta	rv	Willing
	@ at		© on	<b>d</b> by
16	I am very tired beca	ause I had hardly	sleen last night	w by
	(a) any	<b>b</b> enough	© some	<b>d</b> much
	Fill in gap:			
16		is vory important Lade	mina thana (a)	
44	don't put (h)	is very important. I adr till tomorrow what	must be done to	are organized and
	achieve better res	sults (c) others	Always remember	uay. Surely, they will
	homework regularl	v.	. Always remembe	1 to (a) your
	Find the mistake,			
18				
10	This diet says to be	studies, he doesn't get g	ood marks.	[]
20	There was a lot of the	raffic because a car had	l broken up in the m	
21	She was pleased he	ecause she gave the job	i bi oken up in ine n	
22	Our team had score	ed three goals until we g	ot to the match	[]
		and and an and a	, to the materi.	

# Exercise

## General Exercise On Grammar



	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or c	l:	
1	Could you get me t	wo of bread fro	m the bakery?	
	(a) loaves	<b>b</b> packets	© kilos	d pieces
2	This time next mont	th we for our ho	liday.	
	are packing	<b>b</b> will pack	© will have packed	l <b>d</b> will be packing
3	"Whose is this earr	ing?" "I don't know. I fol	and it when I	the house."
	a have cleaned	<b>b</b> had cleaned	© was cleaning	d cleaned
4	"The children must	have been hungry" "I ki	now. They ate	on their plates."
	@ everywhere	<b>b</b> everything	© anything	<b>d</b> something
6	he realized	the truth, he informed t	he police.	
_	(a) As	<b>b</b> No sooner	C As soon as	(d) Soon
6	Ali is putting on his	coat. Laila "If you	out, please buy i	me the newspaper.
		<b>b</b> went		d are going
7		n a hard worker and stil	l	
_	(a) has		© is	d has been
8	He'll explain the po	int again,?		
4		<b>b</b> would he		d wouldn't he
9		n, he made mea		
	a to feel	<b>b</b> felt	© feel	<b>d</b> feeling
10	I can't resist		_	
	a to wear		© wearing	d to wearing
00	I hate mon			
		<b>b</b> borrowed		d borrowing
12		mentioning the news t		
		<b>b</b> in	© of	d at
13	I'm coming in your		•	<b>O</b> 1 - 11 1
		<b>b</b> aren't l	© shan't I	d isn't I
14		my dress dry cleaned		
	@ make	<b>b</b> take	(c) have	d do
16		se earlier. I should	the train.	
	a have caught	<b>b</b> catch		d be catching
16	You have never be	en honest, you?		
	a are	<b>b</b> do	© have	d weren't
	Fill in gap:			
16	Hani is my best fri	end. He (a) his	business in Italy th	ree months ago. When
	he returns to Eavi	ot next July, he (b)	nine months v	vith us. In fact, he has
	called me several	times (c) he left	the city. So, I must	t remember (d)
	our friends to mee	t him when he conies ho	me.	
	Find the mistake	, then correct it:		
16	Ali is so short to in	in the police force.		[]
10	She is friendly with	the two children whose	e their mother is the	e headmaster. []
20	Jana didn't go to t	he dentist for six years.	and addressed agreement of the	
		xperienced to get the jo	b.	[]
-	The flat wasn't cle			[]
-		-		

# Exercise 15

# **General Exercise On Grammar**



	Choose the correct an	nswer from a, b, c or o	d:	
1	In the mile race, the wi	nner was Alibrok	e the school record	for the distance.
		whom	© which	d whose
2	It is getting late. You			
	(a) had better go (b)		© have better ao	d better go
3	It is high time you	your childish wa	ys.	3
	(a) changed (b)			d should change
4	It was not difficult to me	ove into my new hou	se, as I did not hav	e furniture.
	(a) many (b)	more	© much	d several
E	It wasn't easy to put			
	(a) up with (b)			d off with
6	John doesn't intend to	go to the party, and	do I.	
			© neither	<b>d</b> either
T	(a) no (b) Let's go as soon as Ahi	med		
_	(a) is coming (b)	came	© comes	d will come
8	Maha is three years old	d. She is you	ng to go out alone.	
_	<b>(a)</b> too	SO	© very	d enough
9	Mary expects t	he work done when	she comes back.	
	(a) to see	to have seen	© seeing	d to seeing
10	My brother smo	oke a great deal.		
	(a) used to (b)	is using	© was using	d was used
00	Need he go so soon? Y	es, he if he v	vants to get home i	n time.
	(a) needs (b)	must	© may	<b>d</b> would
12	No sooner had the bell	rung the bo		
AA	(a) when (b)	than	© as	d that
(E	On Tuesday we played			
44	a on next day	the next day	© the day next	d that day
	Our cat and dog are alv	ways fighting		
44	(a) themselves (b)			d both
UE	Reading the lin			
46	(a) between (b)	along	© across	d through
UO	My wife prefers playing			
Departs.	(a) to (b)	than	© from	d rather
	Fill in gap:			
17	The Suez Canal is one	e (a) the wo	orld's most famous	canals. In 2015, the
	canal became 72 kilom	neters longer after d	igging the New Su	ez Canal. This project
	took just one year. Ma			
	easy way. The	e ships will bring al	oout \$13 billion do	llars of business into
and the same of	Egypt by 2023. Our pre	esident opened it (d)	August 201	15.
	Find the mistake, the			
	She is jealous at her we			[]
	My grandfather died wi		3	[]
	I'll take some sandwich		ngry.	[]
	I helped him so as he co			[]
22	Dad didn't let me to driv	ve his car.		[]



COLUMN TO THE REAL PROPERTY.				
	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	<b>d:</b>	
1	She can't stand	to music like that.		
	(a) to listen	<b>b</b> listening	© listen	d to be listening
2	She has been in As	wannine years.		
	(a) ago	<b>b</b> from	© for	<b>d</b> since
3	She was ill	she stayed at home.		
	(a) however	<b>b</b> yet	© nevertheless	<b>d</b> consequently
4	Somebody told me	that story, I've forgotter	n?	
	(a) whom	<b>b</b> who	© whose	<b>d</b> which
6	That couldn't be Os	sama you saw me with la	ast night. I haven't s	seen him ages.
	(a) for	<b>b</b> since	© from	<b>d</b> during
6	That is the writer	have been such a	a success.	
	(a) who her books	<b>b</b> who's books	© whose books	d his books
		yptsuch a lot of I		
	a over which	<b>(b)</b> about which	© through whom	d of which
8	The bigger the mer	nory is, theuse	ful the computer is.	
	(a) more	<b>b</b> most	© much	<b>d</b> many
9	The convict denied	any knowledge	e of the stolen mone	ey.
	(a) having	<b>b</b> to have	© had	d of having
10	The examination w	ill end in a few t	ime.	
	@ days'	<b>b</b> dates	© day's	d days
11	The father of many	children to wor	k hard to earn his l	iving.
	@ must	<b>b</b> has	© should	<b>d</b> are
12	The firemen worke	d very hard to put	the fire.	-
	O on	<b>(b) in</b>	© out	d off
13	The house	he lives, needs repairin		_
	(a) which		© whose	d who
14	The Mansions have	e moved. They don't live		
	<b>a</b> anymore	<b>b</b> no longer		d yet
15	The longer we do n	othing, the seri	_	
	@ much	<b>b</b> many	© more	d most
16		ou earn, the per		
	a the high	<b>b</b> the highest	© the higher	<b>d</b> highest
	Fill in gap:			
10	Considered to be	the birthplace of civiliz	ation, Egypt (a)	a leading role in
	the Middle East as	s well (b) the /	Arab World. Within	the framework of (c)
	efforts, Eg	ypt managed to put an e	end to (d) tr	oubles in the area.
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
18	He said to be a disl	nonest man.		[]
-	How long did you p			[]
20	It is very more expe	ensive to live in London	than any other city	in Britain. [
21	Now I wear contac	t lenses I had tested my	eyes every three n	nonths. []
	Tea was grown in I		_	[]
	<b>. .</b>			





## تصريفــات الافعــال الغــير منتظمــة

### Verbs with no changes

## أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة لا تتغير

Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning	Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning
hurt	hurt	hurt	يجرح	let	let	let	يدع
cost	cost	cost	يتكلف	put	put	put	يضع
cut	cut	cut	يقطع	shut	shut	shut	يغلق
hit	hit	hit	يضرب	set	set	set	تغرب
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	يذيع	spread	spread	spread	ينشر / ينتشر

Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning	Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning
build	built	built	يبنى	say	said	said	يقول
burn	burnt	burnt	يحرق	sell	sold	sold	يييع
buy	bought	bought	يشارى	send	sent	sent	يرسل
catch	caught	caught	يمسك	seek	sought	sought	يسعى إلى
creep	crept	crept	يزحف	shine	shone	shone	تشرق
dig	dug	dug	يحفر	shoot	shot	shot	يطلق
feed	fed	fed	يُطعم	sit	sat	sat	يجلس
feel	felt	felt	يشعر	sleep	slept	slept	ينام
fight	fought	fought	يحارب	smell	smelt	smelt	يشم
find	found	found	تخر	spend	spent	spent	يصرف/ينفق
get	got	got	يحصل على	spell	spelt	spelt	يتهجى
grind	ground	ground	يطحن	spill	spilt	spilt	يسكب
have	had	had	يملك	spin	spun	spun	يدور/يغزل
hang	hung	hung	يعلق	spoil	spoiled / spoilt	spoiled / spoilt	يفسد / يتلف
hear	heard	heard	يسمع	split	split	split	ينقسم / ينشطر
hold	held	held	يمسك	stand	stood	stood	يقف
keep	kept	kept	يحفظ	stick	stuck	stuck	يلصق
kneel	knelt	knelt	يركع	sting	stung	stung	يلدغ
lay	laid	laid	يضع	strike	stuck	stuck	يضرب
lie	lied	lied	يكذب	sweep	swept	swept	یکنس
lead	led	led		spin	spun	spun	يدور/يغزل
learn	learnt	learnt	يتعلم	teach	taught	taught	يدرس
leave	left	left	يترك	think	thought	thought	يفكر
lend	lent	lent	يقرض	tell	told	told	يخبر
lose	lost	lost	يفقد	thrust	thrust	thrust	يدفع / يطعن
light	lit / lighted	lit / lighted	يضيءِ / ينير	think	thought	thought	يفكر
make	made	made		understand	understood	understood	يفهم



mean	meant	meant	يعني/يقصد	unwind	unwound	unwound	يفك / يرخي
meet	met	met	يقابل	weep	wept	wept	ييكي
mislead	misled	misled	يضلل / يخدع	win	won	won	يفوز
pay	paid	paid	يدفع	withstand	withstood	withstood	يقاوم / يواجه
read	read	read	يقرأ	withhold	withheld	withheld	يحجب/يعرقل

### Verbs with two changes

### أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة وختلفة

Present	Past simple	P.P	Meaning	Present	Past simple	P.P	Meaning
am, is,are	was/were	been	يكون	mistake	mistook	mistaken	يغطئ
awake	awoke	awoken	يستيقظ	overcome	overcame	overcome	يتغلب على
arise	arose	arisen	يظهر/ينشأ	overdo	overdid	overdone	يبالغ / يفرط
become	became	become	يصبح	overtake	overtook	overtaken	يجتاز/ يتجاوز
begin	began	begun	ييدا	ride	rode	ridden	يركب
bite	bit	bitten	يعض	ring	rang	rung	يرن
blow	blew	blown	يهب	rise	rose	risen	يرتفع
break	broke	broken	يكسر	run	ran	run	يجرى
bear	bore	born	يحمل/يلد	say	said	said	يقول
beat	beat	beaten	يضرب	saw	sawed	sawn	ينشر
choose	chose	chosen	يغتار	see	saw	seen	یری
come	came	come	يأتى	sew	sewed	sewn	يخيط
do - does	did	done	يفعل	shake	shook	shaken	يهز
draw	drew	drawn	يرسم	shrink	shrank	shrunk	ينكمش
drink	drank	drunk	يشرب	shine	shone	shone	يتلألأ/يشرق
drive	drove	driven	يقود	sing	sang	sung	يغنى
draw	drew	drawn		sink	sank	sunk	يغوص
eat	ate	eaten	يأكل	sow	sowed	sown	ييذر
fall	fell	fallen	يسقط	speak	spoke	spoken	يتحدث
fly	flew	flown	يطير	spin	span	spun	يغزل/يدور/يلف
forget	forgot	forgotten	ينسى	steal	stole	stolen	يسرق
forgive	forgave	forgiven	يسامح	swim	swam	swum	يسبح
freeze	froze	frozen	يتجمد	take	took	taken	يأخذ
give	gave	given	يعطى	tear	tore	torn	يمزق
go	went	gone	يذهب	throw	threw	thrown	يرمى
grow	grew	grown	يزرع	wear	wore	worn	يرتدى
get	got	gotten/got	يحصل	write	wrote	written	يكتب
hide	hid	hidden	يختفي	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	يسحب ريسحب
know	knew	known	يعرف	weave	wove	woven	ينسج / يحوك
lie	lay	lain	يرقد		ينتفع به	اللهم علم	



# محتــوى الكتــاب

1	Content
1	Parts of Speech
2	Sentence Form
3	Question Form
4	Present Tenses
5	Past Tenses
6	Future Tenses & forms
7	Passive
8	Relative Clauses
9	Direct and Reported Speech
10	IF Conditional
11	Wishing and regret
12	Conjunctions
13	Infinitive and Gerund
14	Modals & Deduction
15	Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
16	General Exercises

المحتوي
أجزاء الكلام
تكوين الجملة
تكوين السؤال
أزمنة المضارع
أزمنة الماضي
أزمنة و صيغ المستقبل
المبني للمجهول
ضمائر الوصل
المباشر والغير مباشر
af حالات
التمني والندم
الروابط
المصدر و <b>ing</b>
الأفعال الناقصة والاستنتاج
تصريفات الافعال الغير منتظمة
تمارین عامة